Lake County, Indiana
Stormwater Technical Standards Manual

November 2004 Edition
Developed By: Christopher B. Burke Engineering, Ltd. (CBBEL)
Revised October 8, 2013

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER ONE - INTRODUCTION

This document, the Lake County Stormwater Technical Standards Manual, prepared by Christopher B. Burke Engineering, Ltd. for Lake County, contains the necessary technical standards for administering the requirements of 327 IAC 15-13 and the Lake County Stormwater Management ordinance. This document should be considered as a companion document to the Ordinance. Whereas the Ordinance contains the majority of the regulatory authority and general requirements of comprehensive stormwater management, this document contains the necessary means and methods for achieving compliance with the Ordinance. It is not intended as a regulatory document, but rather guidance to assist plan reviewers, developers, and designers. In case there are conflicts between the requirements contained in this document and the Ordinance, the requirements of the Ordinance shall prevail. In addition to the stormwater standards provided in this document, Lake County may have adopted, or may adopt in the future, separate other technical standards regarding various aspects of stormwater conveyance systems that for various reasons may not have been incorporated in this Technical Standards document. In case there are conflicts between the requirements contained in this document and the noted standards, the most restrictive requirements shall prevail.

This document contains formulas and methodologies for the review and design of both stormwater quantity and stormwater quality facilities. Chapters 2 through 7 contain stormwater conveyance and detention calculations and requirements. Chapter 8 contains information on other pollution prevention measures for active construction sites. Chapters 9 through 10 cover calculations required to properly size and design stormwater quality features that will treat runoff long-term following construction completion. A comprehensive glossary of terms is provided in Appendix A. Appendix B contains several useful and necessary standard forms. The list of Best Management Practices (BMPs) minimum specifications for pollution control measures during the construction phase are contained in Appendix C. Appendix D contains BMP minimum specifications for post-construction pollution control measures. The lists of practices in Appendices C and D are subject to periodic changes and the designer is encouraged to check the Lake County Surveyor's website (www.lakecountysurveyor.org) for the most current respective list.

CHAPTER TWO - PERMIT INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

No land disturbance for any construction in a development, as defined in Appendix A, (unless exempted by the Lake County StormwaterManagement and Clean Water Regulations Ordinance) may be undertaken until the plans and information required for such construction have been accepted *in writing* by the Lake County Surveyor on behalf of the Lake County Drainage Board. The following information is required for submittal and approval.

A. Construction Plans

A complete bound set of plan meeting the requirements of the requirements set forth in the Lake County Stormwater Technical Standards Manual shall be submitted to the Lake County Surveyor's Office for review and approval prior to issuance of a construction permit.

Construction plan sheets (larger than 11" by 17", but not to exceed 24" by 36" in size) and an accompanying narrative report shall describe and depict the existing and proposed conditions. This must be submitted in digital format acceptable to the Lake County Surveyor as well as hard copy. Note that in order to gain an understanding of and to evaluate the relationship between the proposed improvements for a specific project section/phase and the proposed improvements for an overall multi-section (phased) project, the detailed information requested herein for the first section/phase being permitted must be accompanied by an overall project plan that includes the location, dimensions, and supporting analyses of all detention/retention facilities, primary conveyance facilities, and outlet conditions. Construction plans need to include the following detailed items:

i. **Title sheet** which includes location map, vicinity map, operating authority, design company name, developer name, and index of plan sheets. The title sheet shall also include the following data summary tables:
   a. Water Quality Structure Table – Provide a table listing each post-construction water quality practice proposed for compliance with clean water standards, the type (e.g. pond, wetland, manufactured unit, etc.) and the state plane coordinates of the center;
   b. Storm Structure Data Table – A Table summarizing the total number of proposed manholes, inlets, and the total length of each pipe material and size;
   c. Surface Type Summary – A table summarizing the total proposed impervious area and pervious area for the site

ii. A copy of **a legal boundary survey** for the site, performed in accordance with Rule 12 of Title 865 of the Indiana Administrative Code or any applicable and subsequently adopted rule or regulation for the subdivision limits, including all drainage easements and wetlands.

iii. A **reduced plat or project site map** showing the parcel identification numbers, lot numbers, lot boundaries, easements, and road layout and names. The reduced map must be legible and submitted on a sheet or sheets no larger than eleven (11) inches by seventeen (17) inches for all phases or sections of the project site.

iv. A **current Drain Tile Survey** to be provided as described below in A. v. i.*)*

v. An **existing project site layout** that must include the following information:

a. A topographic map of the land to be developed and such adjoining land whose topography may affect the layout or drainage of the development. The contour intervals shall be one (1) foot when slopes are less than or equal to two percent (<2%) and shall be two (2) feet when slopes exceed two percent (>2%). All elevations shall be given in either) North American Vertical Datum of 1988 (NAVD). The horizontal datum of topographic map shall be based on Indiana State Plane Coordinates, NAD83. The map will contain a notation indicating this datum information.

   a] If the project site is less than or equal to two (2) acres in total land area, the topographic map shall include all topography of land surrounding the site to a distance of at least one hundred (100) feet.

   b] If the project site is greater than two (2) acres in total land area, the topographic map shall include all topography of land surrounding the site to a distance of at least two hundred (200) feet.

b. Location, name, and normal water level of all wetlands, lakes, ponds, and water courses on or adjacent to the project site.
c. Location of all existing structures on the project site.
d. One hundred (100) year floodplains, floodway fringes, floodways, and date reference information used to establish such. Please note if none exists.
e. Identification and delineation of vegetative cover such as grass, weeds, brush, and trees on the project site.
f. Location of storm, sanitary, combined sewer, and septic tank systems and outfalls.
g. Apparent land use of all adjacent properties.
h. Identification and delineation of sensitive areas.
i. The location of regulated drains, farm drains, inlets and outfalls, if any of record, along with recordation number, etc. This should include the state plane coordinates for the tile ends at the property lines as well as every 200-ft throughout the project limits. An affidavit from the land owner addressing the existing tiles should be included in the Technical Information Report.
j. Location of all existing cornerstones within the proposed development and a plan to protect and preserve them.
k. Date topographic survey (field work) was performed.
l. The locations of all utility pipelines and respective easements including railroad rights-of-way and easements.

vi. A **grading and drainage plan**, including the following information:

a. Location of all proposed site improvements, including roads, utilities, lot delineation and identification, proposed structures, and common areas, along with finished floor elevations of all living areas.
b. Location of all proposed septic fields and grading above those proposed fields.
c. One hundred (100) year floodplains, floodway fringes, floodways, and date reference information used to establish such. Please note if none exists.
d. Delineation of all proposed land disturbing activities, including off-site activities that will provide services to the project site.
e. Information regarding any off-site borrow, stockpile, or disposal areas that are associated with a project site, and under the control of the project site owner.
f. Existing and proposed topographic information at a contour interval appropriate to indicate drainage patterns.
g. Location, size, and dimensions of all existing streams to be maintained, and new drainage systems such as culverts, bridges, storm sewers, conveyance channels, and 100-year overflow paths/ponding areas shown as hatched areas, along with all associated easements.
h. Location, size, and dimensions of features such as permanent retention or detention facilities, including natural or constructed wetlands, used for the purpose of stormwater management. Include existing retention or detention facilities that will be maintained, enlarged, or otherwise altered and new ponds or basins to be built.
i. One or more typical cross sections of all existing and proposed channels or other open drainage facilities (including existing retention or detention facilities) carried to a point above the 100-year high water and showing the elevation of the existing land and the proposed changes, together with the high water elevations expected from the 100-year storm under the controlled conditions called for by this Ordinance, and the relationship of structures, streets, and other facilities.

vii. **Utility plan sheet(s)** showing the location of all proposed utility lines for the project.

viii. **Storm sewer plan/profile sheet(s)** showing the elevation, size, length, location of all proposed storm sewers. Existing and proposed ground grades, storm sewer structures elevations, and utility crossings also must be included.

ix. **A 24-inch by 36-inch plat** (both in hard copy and digital format acceptable to the Lake County Surveyor), including the following information:

a. Legal description.
b. Cross reference to Rule 12.
c. Regulated drain statement and table [Including any maintenance agreements].

x. Any other information required by Lake County Drainage Board and/or Lake County Surveyor in order to thoroughly evaluate the submitted material. If the proposed project involves excavation greater than 15 feet in depth and greater than 10,000 square feet of area, the Lake County Drainage Board or Lake County Surveyor's Office may require review and approval of a groundwater impact study.

B. Stormwater Drainage Technical Report

A written stormwater drainage technical report must contain a discussion of the steps taken in the design of the stormwater drainage system. Note that in order to gain an understanding of and to evaluate the relationship between the proposed improvements for a specific project section/phase and the proposed improvements for an overall multi-section (phased) project, the detailed information requested herein for the first section/phase being permitted must be accompanied by an overall project plan that includes the location, dimensions, and supporting analysis of all detention/retention facilities, primary conveyance facilities, and outlet conditions.

The technical report needs to include the following detailed items:

i. **A completed Application for Stormwater Permit**

ii. **A summary report**, including the following information:

a. Description of the nature and purpose of the project.
b. The significant drainage problems associated with the project.
c. The analysis procedure used to evaluate these problems and to propose solutions.
d. Any assumptions or special conditions associated with the use of these procedures, especially the hydrologic or hydraulic methods.
e. The proposed design of the drainage control system.
f. The results of the analysis of the proposed drainage control system showing that it does solve the project's drainage problems. Any hydrologic or hydraulic calculations or modeling results must be adequately cited and described in the summary description. If hydrologic or hydraulic models are used, the input and output files for all necessary runs must be included in the appendices. A map showing any drainage area subdivisions used in the analysis must accompany the report. A summary table must be provided including, runoff areas, curve numbers or runoff coefficients, times-of-concentration, allowable release rates and actual resulting release rates.
g. Soil properties, characteristics, limitations, and hazards associated with the project site and the measures that will be integrated into the project to overcome or minimize adverse soil conditions.
h. Identification of any other State or Federal water quality permits that are required for construction activities associated with the owner's project site.

i. A low-impact practices discussion. The discussion should evaluate the application of planning, bioretention, stormwater harvesting, suspended solids settling facilities, filtration methods, floatable capture and runoff reduction methods to the proposed project.

iii. A **Hydrologic/Hydraulic Analysis**, consistent with the methodologies and calculation included in the Lake County Stormwater Technical Standards Manual, and including the following information:

a. A hydraulic report detailing existing and proposed drainage patterns on the subject site. The report should include a description of present land use and proposed land use. Any off-site drainage entering the site or any downstream restrictions should be addressed as well. This report should be comprehensive and detail all of the steps the engineer took during the design process.
b. All hydrologic and hydraulic computations should be included in the submittal. These calculations should include, but are not limited to the following: runoff curve numbers and runoff coefficients, runoff calculations, stage-discharge relationships, times-of-concentration and storage volumes.
c. Copies of all computer runs. These computer runs should include both the input and the outputs. Electronic copies of the computer runs with input files must also be included.
d. A set of exhibits should be included showing the drainage sub-areas and a schematic detailing of how the computer models were set up.
e. A conclusion, which summarizes the hydraulic design and details how this design satisfies this Ordinance.
f. Signed and Certified (stamped) by a Professional Engineer or Surveyor registered in the State of Indiana.

C. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan for Construction Sites

A stormwater pollution prevention plan associated with construction activities must be designed to, at least, meet the requirements of this Ordinance and must include the following:

i. Location, dimensions, detailed specifications, and construction details of all temporary and permanent stormwater quality measures.
ii. Soil map of the predominant soil types, as determined by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) Soil Survey, or as determined by a soil scientist. Hydrologic classification for soils should be shown when hydrologic methods requiring soils information are used. A soil legend must be included with the soil map.
iii. 14-Digit Watershed Hydrologic Unit Code.
iv. An estimate of the peak discharge, based on the ten (10) year storm 24-hour event, of the project site for post-construction conditions.

v. Locations where stormwater may be directly discharged into groundwater, such as abandoned wells or sinkholes. Please note if none exists.
vi. Locations of specific points where stormwater discharge will leave the project site.
vii. Name of all receiving waters. If the discharge is to a separate municipal storm sewer, identify the name of the municipal operator and the ultimate receiving water.
viii. Temporary stabilization plans and sequence of implementation.
ix. Permanent stabilization plans and sequence of implementation.
x. Temporary and permanent stabilization plans shall include the following:
   a. Specifications and application rates for soil amendments and seed mixtures.
   b. The type and application rate for anchored mulch.
xi. General construction sequence of how the project site will be built, including phases of construction and the associated time of year they are expected to be done.
xii. Construction sequence describing the relationship between implementation of stormwater quality measures and stages of construction activities.
xiii. Location of all soil stockpiles and borrow areas including off-site stockpiles and borrow areas.
xiv. A typical erosion and sediment control plan for individual lot development.
xv. Self-monitoring program including plan and procedures.
xvi. A description of potential pollutant sources associated with the construction activities, which may reasonably be expected to add a significant amount of pollutants to stormwater discharges.
xvii. Material handling and storage associated with construction activity shall meet the spill prevention and spill response requirements in 327 IAC 2-6.1.
xviii. Name, address, telephone number, and list of qualifications of the trained individual in charge of the mandatory stormwater pollution prevention self-monitoring program for the project site.

D. Post-Construction Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan

The post-construction storm water pollution prevention plan must include the following information:

i. A description of potential pollutant sources from the proposed land use, which may reasonably be expected to add a significant amount of pollutants to stormwater discharges.
ii. Location, dimensions, detailed specifications, and construction details of all post-construction stormwater quality measures.
iii. A description of measures that will be installed to control pollutants in stormwater discharges that will occur after construction activities have been completed. Such practices include infiltration of runoff, flow reduction by use of open vegetated swales and natural depressions, buffer strip and riparian zone preservation, filter strip creation, minimization of land disturbance and surface imperviousness, maximization of open space, and stormwater retention and detention ponds.
iv. A sequence describing when each post-construction stormwater quality measure will be installed.

v. Stormwater quality measures that will remove or minimize pollutants from stormwater run-off.

vi. Stormwater quality measures that will be implemented to prevent or minimize adverse impacts to stream and riparian habitat.

vii. An operation and maintenance manual for all post-construction stormwater quality measures to facilitate their proper long-term function. This operation and maintenance manual shall be made available to future parties who will assume responsibility for the operation and maintenance of the post-construction stormwater quality measures. The manual shall include the following:

   a. Contact information for the BMP owner (i.e. name, address, business phone number, cell phone number, pager number, e-mail address, etc.).
   b. A statement that the BMP owner is responsible for all costs associated with maintaining the BMP.
   c. A right-of-entry statement authorization allowing County personnel to inspect and maintain the BMP.
   d. Specific actions to be taken regarding routine maintenance, remedial maintenance of structural components, and sediment removal. Sediment removal procedures should be explained in both narrative and graphical forms. A tabular schedule should be provided listing all maintenance activities and dates for performing these required maintenance activities.
   e. Site drawings showing the location of the BMP and access easement, cross sections of BMP features (i.e. pond, forebay(s), structural components, etc.), and the point of discharge for stormwater treated by the BMP. Additionally, the drawings should provide dimensional information and indicate where applicable warning signs will be placed around a stormwater quality pond. These drawings need to be submitted both in hard copy and in digital format acceptable to the Lake County Surveyor.

viii. If the proposed project has the potential to have an accidental illicit discharge to the stormwater system, the Lake County Drainage Board or Lake County Surveyor's Office may require the submission and approval of an emergency discharge mitigation plan.

E. **Final Submittal Requirements**

i. One full size (24" x 36") and one ½ size 11 x 17 copy of all plan sheets

ii. An electronic copy of all plans and reports shall be submitted to the Lake County Surveyor's Office after completion of the review process and prior to final approval by the Lake County Surveyor's Office. All plans shall be in AutoCAD DWG format and in State Plane Coordinates. A PDF electronic copy shall also be included.

F. Change Notification

Notification must be sent to the Lake County Surveyor's Office when **ANY** changes are made to the final approved design, plans or technical report after approval by the office.

CHAPTER THREE
METHODOLOGY FOR DETERMINATION OF RUNOFF RATES

Runoff rates shall be computed for the area of the parcel under development plus the area of the watershed flowing into the parcel under development. The rate of runoff which is generated as the result of a given rainfall intensity may be calculated as follows:

A. Development Sites Less than or Equal to 5 Acres in Size, With a Contributing Drainage Area Less than or Equal to 50 Acres and No Depressional Storage

The Rational Method may be used to determine the peak rate of runoff from the development site. In the Rational Method, the peak rate of runoff, Q, in cubic feet per second (cfs) is computed as:

$$Q = CIA$$

Where:

C = Runoff coefficient, representing the characteristics of the drainage area and defined as the ratio of runoff to rainfall.

I = Average intensity of rainfall in inches per hour for a duration equal to the time of concentration (t_c) for a selected rainfall frequency.

A = Tributary drainage area in acres.

Values for the runoff coefficient "C" are provided in **Tables 3-1** and **3-2**, which show values for different types of surfaces and local soil characteristics. The composite "C" value used for a given drainage area with various surface types shall be the weighted average value for the total area calculated from a breakdown of individual areas having different surface types. **Table 3-3** provides runoff coefficients and inlet times for different land use classifications. Please note the values provided in Table 3-3 should only be used for off-site areas where detailed knowledge is not available. Actual site runoff coefficients and times-of-concentration for the existing and proposed development should be calculated based on the proposed plans by the design engineer.

Rainfall intensity shall be determined from the rainfall frequency data shown in **Table 3-4**.

In general, the time of concentration (t_c) methodology to be used for all stormwater management projects within Lake County shall be as outlined in the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) - NRCS TR-55 Manual. In urban or developed areas, the methodology to be used shall be the sum of the inlet time and flow time in the stormwater facility from the most remote part of the drainage area to the point under consideration. The flow time in the storm sewers may be estimated by the distance in feet divided by velocity of flow in feet per second. The velocity shall be determined by the Manning's Equation (see Chapter 5). Inlet time is the combined time required for the runoff to reach the inlet of the storm sewer. It includes overland flow time and flow time through established surface drainage channels such as swales, ditches, and sheet flow across such areas as lawns, fields, and other graded surfaces.

TABLE 3-1

Urban Runoff Coefficients	
Type of Surface	*Runoff Coefficient "C"*
◆ **Hard Surfaces**	
Asphalt	0.82
Concrete	0.85
Roof	0.85
◆ **Lawns** (Sandy)	
Flat (0-2% Slope)	0.07
Rolling (2-7% Slope)	0.12
Steep (Greater than 7% Slope)	0.17
◆ **Lawns** (Clay)	
Flat (0-2% Slope)	0.16
Rolling (2-7% Slope)	0.21
Steep (Greater than 7% Slope)	0.30

Source: HERPICC Stormwater Drainage Manual, July 1995.

TABLE 3-2

Rural Runoff Coefficients	
Type of Surface	*Runoff Coefficient "C"*
◆ **Woodland** (Sandy)	
Flat (0-5% Slope)	0.10
Rolling (5-10% Slope)	0.25
Steep (Greater than 10% Slope)	0.30
◆ **Woodland** (Clay)	
Flat (0-5% Slope)	0.30
Rolling (5-10% Slope)	0.35
Steep (Greater than 10% Slope)	0.50
◆ **Pasture** (Sandy)	
Flat (0-5% Slope)	0.10
Rolling (5-10% Slope)	0.16
Steep (Greater than 10% Slope)	0.22
◆ **Pasture** (Clay)	
Flat (0-5% Slope)	0.30
Rolling (5-10% Slope)	0.36
Steep (Greater than 10% Slope)	0.42
◆ **Cultivated** (Sandy)	
Flat (0-5% Slope)	0.30
Rolling (5-10% Slope)	0.40
Steep (Greater than 10% Slope)	0.52
◆ **Cultivated** (Clay)	
Flat (0-5% Slope)	0.50
Rolling (5-10% Slope)	0.60
Steep (Greater than 10% Slope)	0.72

Source: HERPICC Stormwater Drainage Manual, July 1995.

TABLE 3-3

Runoff Coefficients "C" by Land Use and Typical Inlet Times				
Land Use	*Runoff Coefficients*			*Inlet Times (Minutes)* **(4)**
	Flat **(1)**	Rolling **(2)**	Steep **(3)**	
Commercial *(CBD)*	0.75	0.83	0.91	5
Commercial *(Neighborhood)*	0.54	0.60	0.66	5
Industrial	0.63	0.70	0.77	
Garden Apartments	0.54	0.60	0.66	
Churches	0.54	0.60	0.66	
Schools	0.31	0.35	0.39	10
Semi Detached Residential	0.45	0.50	0.55	
Detached Residential	0.40	0.45	0.50	
Quarter Acre Lots	0.36	0.40	0.44	
Half Acre Lots	0.31	0.35	0.39	
Parkland	0.18	0.20	0.22	To be Computed

Source: HERPICC Stormwater Drainage Manual, July 1995.

(1) Flat terrain involves slopes of 0-2%.
(2) Rolling terrain involves slopes of 2-7%.
(3) Steep terrain involves slopes greater than 7%.
(4) Interpolation, extrapolation and adjustment for local conditions shall be based on engineering experience and judgment and shall be supported with documentation.

B. Development Sites Greater Than 5 Acres in Size or Contributing Drainage Area Greater than 50 Acres or With Significant Depressional Storage

The runoff rate for these development sites and contributing drainage areas shall be determined by a computer model that can generate hydrographs based on the NRCS TR-55 time of concentration and curve number calculation methodologies and the appropriate Huff Rainfall Distribution. The peak runoff rate must be determined by performing a critical duration analysis using the storm durations provided in Table 3-4. A critical duration analysis requires the analysis of all storm durations to determine the peak runoff. The rainfall depths for various frequencies shall be taken from **Table 3-5**. The Huff Rainfall distributions ordinates are found in **Table 3-6**. Examples of computer models that can generate such hydrographs include TR-20 (NRCS), HEC-HMS (COE), and HEC-1 (COE). These programs may be downloaded free of charge from the associated agencies' web sites. Other models may be acceptable and should be approved by the Lake County Surveyor prior to their utilization.

TABLE 3-4

Rainfall Intensities for Various Return Periods and Storm Durations						
Intensity (Inches/Hour)						
Duration	*Return Period (Years)*					
	2	5	10	25	50	100
5 Min.	5.04	8.24	7.08	8.16	9.00	9.84
10 Min.	3.84	4.74	5.46	6.24	6.90	7.50
15 Min.	3.20	3.96	4.52	5.16	5.72	6.20
20 Min.	2.85	3.51	4.02	4.59	5.10	5.55
30 Min.	2.22	2.74	3.12	3.58	3.96	4.32
40 Min.	1.85	2.28	2.61	2.99	3.30	3.60
50 Min.	1.60	1.97	2.24	2.57	2.83	3.10
1 Hr.	1.40	1.73	1.97	2.25	2.49	2.72
2 Hrs.	0.86	1.06	1.21	1.38	1.53	1.67
3 Hrs.	0.61	0.76	0.87	0.99	1.10	1.20
6 Hrs.	0.37	0.46	0.52	0.60	0.66	0.72
12 Hrs.	0.22	0.27	0.30	0.35	0.38	0.42
24 Hrs.	0.13	0.15	0.18	0.20	0.22	0.24

TABLE 3-5

Rainfall Depths for Various Return Periods and Storm Durations						
Depth (Inches)						
Duration	*Return Period (Years)*					
	2	5	10	25	50	100
5 Min.	0.42	0.69	0.59	0.68	0.75	0.82
10 Min.	0.64	0.79	0.91	1.04	1.15	1.25
15 Min.	0.80	0.99	1.13	1.29	1.43	1.55
20 Min.	0.95	1.17	1.34	1.53	1.70	1.85
30 Min.	1.11	1.37	1.56	1.79	1.98	2.16
40 Min.	1.23	1.52	1.74	1.99	2.20	2.40
50 Min.	1.33	1.64	1.87	2.14	2.36	2.58
1 Hr.	1.40	1.73	1.97	2.25	2.49	2.72
2 Hrs.	1.72	2.12	2.42	2.76	3.06	3.34
3 Hrs.	1.83	2.28	2.61	2.97	3.30	3.60
6 Hrs.	2.22	2.76	3.12	3.60	3.96	4.32
12 Hrs.	2.64	3.24	3.60	4.20	4.56	5.04
24 Hrs.	3.00	3.70	4.23	4.83	5.35	5.83

TABLE 3-6

Huff Rainfall Distribution Ordinates				
	Cumulative Percent of Storm Depth			
Cumulative Percent of Storm Time	**1st Quartile (0 ≤ 6 hrs duration)**	**2nd Quartile (>6, ≤ 12 hrs duration)**	**3rd Quartile (>12, ≤ 24 hrs duration)**	**4th Quartile (>24 hrs duration)**
0	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
5	16	3	3	2
10	33	8	6	5
15	43	12	9	8
20	52	16	12	10
25	60	22	15	13
30	66	29	19	16
35	71	39	232	19
40	75	51	27	22
45	79	62	32	25
50	82	70	38	28
55	84	76	45	32
60	86	81	57	35
65	88	85	70	39
70	90	88	79	45
75	92	91	85	51
80	94	93	89	59
85	96	95	92	72
90	97	97	95	84
95	98	98	97	92
100	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00

Source: Bulletin 71, "Rainfall Frequency Atlas of the Midwest", Floyd A. Huff and James A. Angel, 1992

C. Development Sites with Drainage Areas Greater than or Equal to One Square Mile

For the design of any major drainage system, as defined in **Appendix A**, the discharge must be obtained from, or be accepted by, the IDNR. Other portions of the site must use the discharge methodology in the applicable section of this Article.

D. No Net Loss Floodplain Storage Policy

Floodplains exist adjacent to all natural and constructed streams, regardless of contributing drainage area or whether they have been previously identified or mapped. Due to potential impacts of floodplain loss on peak flows in streams and on the environment, disturbance to floodplains should be avoided. When the avoidance of floodplain disturbance is not practical, the natural functions of floodplain should be preserved to the maximum extent possible.

Compensatory excavation 1.5 times the floodplain storage lost shall be required for all activities within floodplain of streams located in Lake County where drainage area of the stream is equal or larger than one square mile. This requirement shall be considered to be above and beyond the minimum requirements provided in the applicable flood hazard areas ordinance currently in effect in Lake County. The Lake County Surveyor may alter the compensation ratio, based on circumstances for a specific project, for specific reasons.

Compensatory storage is required when a portion of the floodplain is filled, occupied by a structure, or when as a result of a project a change in the channel hydraulics occurs that reduces the existing available floodplain storage. The compensatory storage should be located adjacent or opposite the placement of the fill and maintain an unimpeded connection to an adjoining floodplain area.

CHAPTER FOUR
METHODOLOGY FOR DETERMINATION OF DETENTION STORAGE VOLUMES

A. Development Sites Less than or Equal to 5 Acres in Size, With a Contributing Drainage Area Less than or Equal to 50 Acres and No Depressional Storage

The required volume of stormwater storage may be calculated using the Rational Method and based on the runoff from a 100-year return period storm. A computer model, such as TR-20 (NRCS), HEC-HMS (COE), and HEC-1 (COE), that can generate hydrographs based on the NRCS TR-55 time of concentration and curve number calculation methodologies may also be used along with the appropriate Huff Rainfall Distribution and critical duration analysis storm.

The following 8-step procedure, based on the Rational Method, may be used to determine the required volume of storage

Step Procedure

1. Determine total drainage area in acres "A".
2. Determine the parcel area tributary to each outlet and determine the post-development 100-year release runoff rate (Q_u) based on general release rates provided in Chapter 7 of these Technical Standards document.
3 Determine composite runoff coefficient "C_d" based on developed conditions and a 100-year return period.
4. Determine 100-year return rainfall intensity "I_d" for various storm durations "t_d" up through the time of concentration for the developed area using **Table 3-4**. Continue using the storm events longer than the t_d until a peak storage elevation is documented.
5. Determine developed inflow rates "Q_d" for various storm durations "t_d", measured in hours.

$$Q_d = (C_d)(I_d)(A_d)$$

6. Compute a storage rate "$S(t_d)$" for various storm durations "t_d" up through the time of concentration of the developed area.

$$S(t_d) = (Q_d) - (Q_u)$$

7. Compute required storage volume "S_R" in acre-feet for each storm duration "t_d". This assumes a triangular hydrograph of duration ($2t_d$) hours with a peak flow of $S(t_d)$ at t_d hours.

$$S_R = S(t_d)t\left(\frac{d}{12}\right)$$

8. Select largest storage volume computed in Step 7 for any storm duration "t_d" for detention basin design.

B. Development Sites Greater Than 5 Acres in Size or Contributing Drainage Area Greater than 50 Acres or With Significant Depressional Storage

All runoff detention storage calculations for these development sites shall be prepared using a computer model that can generate hydrographs based on the NRCS TR-55 time of concentration and curve number calculation methodologies. The appropriate Huff Rainfall Distribution shall be utilized to determine the required storage volume and critical duration analysis. The allowable release rates shall be determined based on the methodologies provided in Chapter 7 of these Technical Standards document. Examples of computer models that can generate such hydrographs include TR-20 (NRCS), HEC-HMS (COE), and HEC-1 (COE). These programs may be downloaded free of charge from the associated agencies' web sites. Other models may be acceptable and should be accepted by the Lake County Surveyor prior to their utilization.

CHAPTER FIVE

STORM SEWER DESIGN STANDARDS AND SPECIFICATIONS

All storm sewers, whether private or public, and whether constructed on private or public property shall conform to the design standards and other requirements contained herein.

A. Design Storm Frequencies

1. Storm sewers may be sized using hydrograph methods or the Rational Method. All storm sewers, inlets, catch basins, and street gutters shall accommodate (subject to the "allowable spread" provisions discussed later in this Section), as a minimum, peak runoff from a critical duration, 10-year return frequency storm calculated based on methodology described in Chapter 3. Additional discharges to storm sewer systems allowed in Section L below of this Section must be considered in all design calculations. For Rational Method analysis, the duration shall be equal to the time of concentration for the drainage area. In computer based analysis, the duration is as noted in the applicable methodology associated with the computer program.

2. Culverts shall be capable of accommodating peak runoff from a critical duration, 25-, 50- and 100-year frequency storm when crossing under a road which is part of the INDOT Rural Functional Classification System or is classified as freeway, arterial, and/or collectors by the Lake County Zoning Ordinance, respectively, or provides the only access to and from any portion of any commercial or residential developments.

3. For portions of the system considered minor drainage systems, the allowable spread of water on Collector Streets is limited to maintaining two clear 12-foot moving lanes of traffic. One lane is to be maintained on Local Roads, while other access lanes (such as a subdivision cul-de-sac) can have a water spread equal to one-half of their total width. An overflow channel/swale between sag inlets and overflow paths or basin shall be provided at sag inlets so that the maximum depth of water that might be ponded in the street sag shall not exceed 7 inches measured from elevation of gutter.

4. Facilities functioning as a major drainage system as defined in **Appendix A** must also meet IDNR, Division of Water design standards.

B. Manning's Equation

Determination of hydraulic capacity for storm sewers sized by the

Rational Method analysis must be done using Manning's Equation where:

$$V = (1.486/n)(R^{2/3})(S^{1/2})$$

Then:

$$Q=(V)(A)$$

Where:

Q = capacity in cubic feet per second

V = mean velocity of flow in feet per second

A = cross sectional area in square feet

R = hydraulic radius in feet

S = slope of the energy grade line in feet per foot

n = Manning's "n" or roughness coefficient

The hydraulic radius, R, is defined as the cross sectional area of flow divided by the wetted flow surface or wetted perimeter. Allowable "n" values and maximum permissible velocities for storm sewer materials are listed in **Table 5-1**.

C. Backwater Method for Pipe System Analysis

For hydraulic analysis of existing or proposed storm drains which possess submerged outfalls, a more sophisticated design/analysis methodology than Manning's equation will be required. The backwater analysis method provides a more accurate estimate of pipe flow by calculating individual head losses in pipe systems that are surcharged and/or have submerged outlets. These head losses are added to a known downstream water surface elevation to give a design water surface elevation for a given flow at the desired upstream location. For example, the starting water surface elevation for a pipe submerged in a detention pond should be the water surface elevation in the pond for the storm corresponding to the pipe design storm such as the 10-yr storm. Total head losses may be determined as follows:

Total head loss = frictional loss + manhole loss + velocity head loss + junction loss

TABLE 5-1

Typical Values of Manning's "n"		
Material	*Manning's "n"*	*Maximum Velocities (feet/second)*
◆ **Closed Conduits**		
Concrete	0.013	10
Vitrified Clay	0.013	10
Smooth Wall HDPE	0.012	10
Smooth Wall PVC	0.011	10
◆ **Circular CMP, Annular Corrugations, 2 2/3 x ½ inch**		
Unpaved	0.024	7
25% Paved	0.021	7
50% Paved	0.018	7
100% Paved	0.013	7
Concrete Culverts	0.013	10
HDPE or PVC	0.012	10
◆ **Open Channels**		
Concrete, Trowel Finish	0.013	10
Concrete, Broom Finish	0.015	10
Gunite	0.018	10
Riprap Placed	0.030	10
Riprap Dumped	0.035	10
Gabion	0.028	10
New Earth **(1)**	0.025	4
Existing Earth **(2)**	0.030	4
Dense Growth of Weeds	0.040	4
Dense Weeds and Brush	0.040	4
Swale with Grass	0.035	4

Source of manning "n" values: HERPICC Stormwater Drainage Manual, July 1995.

(1) New earth (uniform, sodded, clay soil)

(2) Existing earth (fairly uniform, with some weeds). Various computer modeling programs such as HYDRA, ILLUDRAIN, and STORMCAD are available for analysis of storm drains under these conditions. Computer models to be utilized, other than those listed, must be accepted by the Lake County Drainage Board and/or Lake County Surveyor.

D. Minimum Size for Storm Sewers

The minimum diameter of all storm sewers shall be 12 inches. When the minimum 12-inch diameter pipe will not limit the rate of release to the required amount, the rate of release for detention storage shall be controlled by an orifice plate or other device, subject to acceptance of the Lake County Surveyor. The restrictive device must be placed in an easily accessible / maintainable location.

E. Pipe Cover, Grade, and Separation from Sanitary Sewers and Water Mains

Pipe grade shall be such that, in general, a minimum of 2.0 feet of cover is maintained over the top of the pipe. If the pipe is to be placed under pavement, then the minimum pipe cover shall be 2.5 feet from top of pavement to top of pipe. Pipe cover less than the minimum may be allowed per manufacturer's specifications or recommendation and used only upon written acceptance from the Lake County Surveyor. Uniform slopes shall be maintained between inlets, manholes and inlets to manholes. Final grade shall be set with full consideration of the capacity required, sedimentation problems, and other design parameters. Minimum and maximum allowable slopes shall be those capable of producing velocities of between 2.5 and 10 feet per second, respectively, when the sewer is flowing full. Maximum permissible velocities for various storm sewer materials are listed in **Table 5-1**. Based on Kutter's formula using an "n" value of 0.013, the following are the <u>minimum</u> slopes should be provided. Slopes greater than these are desirable:

Sewer Size	Minimum Slope in Feet Per 100 Feet
12 inch	0.22
14 inch	0.17
15 inch	0.15
16 inch	0.14
18 inch	0.12
21 inch	0.10
24 inch	0.08
27 inch	0.067
30 inch	0.058
36 inch	0.046

A minimum of 2.0 feet of vertical separation between storm sewers and sanitary sewers shall be required. When this is not possible, the sanitary sewer must be encased in concrete or ductile steel within 5 feet, each side, of the crossing centerline. Storm sewers shall be laid at least 10 feet horizontally from any existing or proposed water main. The distance shall be measured edge to edge. In cases where it is not practical to maintain a ten-foot separation, the appropriate reviewing agency may allow deviation on a case-by-case basis, if supported by data from the design engineer. Such deviation may allow installation of the storm sewer closer to a water main, provided that the water main is in a separate trench or on an undisturbed earth shelf located on one side of the storm sewer and at the elevation so the bottom of the water main is at least 18 inches above the top of the storm sewer.

F. Alignment

Storm sewers shall be straight between manholes and/or inlets. *For information on the required easements, see Stormwater Ordinance [Chapter 3, section 4].*

G. Manholes/Inlets

All Inlets must be pre-stamped with an appropriate "clean water" message. Manholes and/or inlets shall be installed to provide human access to continuous underground storm sewers for the purpose of inspection and maintenance. The casting access minimum inside diameter shall be no less than 36 inches or a rectangular opening of no less than 22 inches by 22 inches. Manholes shall be provided at the following locations:

1. Where two or more storm sewers converge.
2. Where pipe size or the pipe material changes.
3. Where a change in horizontal alignment occurs.
4. Where a change in pipe slope occurs.
5. At intervals in straight sections of sewer, not to exceed the maximum allowed. The maximum distance between storm sewer manholes shall be as shown in **Table 5-2**.

TABLE 5-2

Maximum Distance Between Manholes	
Size of Pipe (Inches)	**Maximum Distance (Feet)**
12 through 42	400
48 and larger	600

In addition to the above requirements, a minimum drop of 0.1 foot through manholes and inlet structures should be provided if benchwalls are not used. When changing pipe size, match crowns of pipes, unless detailed modeling of hydraulic grade line shows that another arrangement would be as effective. Pipe slope should not be so steep that inlets surcharge (i.e. hydraulic grade line should remain below rim elevation).

6. Manhole/inlet inside sizing shall be as shown in **Table 5-3**.

TABLE 5-3

Manhole/Inlet Inside Sizing		
Depth of Structure	**Minimum Diameter**	**Minimum Square Opening**
Less than 5 feet	36 inches	36" x 36"
5 feet or more	48 inches	48" x 48"

H. Inlet Sizing and Spacing

Inlets or drainage structures shall be utilized to collect surface water through grated openings and convey it to storm sewers, channels, or culverts. The inlet grate opening provided shall be adequate to pass the design 10-year flow with 50% of the sag inlet areas clogged. An overload channel from sag inlets to the overflow channel or basin shall be provided at sag inlets. Inlet design and spacing may be done using the hydraulic equations by manufacturers or orifice/weir equations. Use of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers HEC-12 computer program is also an acceptable method. Gutter spread on continuous grades may be determined using the Manning's equation. Further guidance regarding gutter spread calculation may be found in the latest edition of HERPICC Stormwater Drainage Manual, available from the Local Technical Assistance Program (LTAP). At the time of printing of this document, contact information for LTAP was:

Indiana LTAP
Purdue University
Toll-Free: (800) 428-7369 (Indiana only)
Phone: (765) 494-2164
Fax: (765) 496-1176
Email: inltap@ecn.purdue.edu
Website: www.purdue.edu/INLTAP/

I. Installation and Workmanship

Bedding and backfill materials around storm sewer pipes, sub-drains, and the associated structures are limited to: #8 crushed stone, hand-tamped or walked-in; "B" borrow, compacted to 95% Standard Proctor density; flowable fill; and native or structural backfill, compacted to 95% Standard Proctor density. The specific location requirements for the use of these materials are dependent on pipe location in relation to pavement structures and on pipe material as detailed in **Figure 5-2** and **Figure 5-3**. The specifications for the construction of storm sewers and sub-drains, including backfill requirements, shall not be less stringent than those set forth in the latest edition of the INDOT, "Standard Specifications". Additionally, ductile iron pipe shall be laid in accordance with American Water Works Association (AWWA) C-600 and clay pipe shall be laid in accordance with either American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM) C-12 or the appropriate American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) specifications. Dips/sags on newly installed storm systems will not be allowed. Also, infiltration from cracks, missing pieces, and joints would not be allowed. Variations from these standards must be justified and receive written acceptance from the Lake County Surveyor.

In addition to the above requirements, installation of HDPE or PVC pipe will require full-time inspection paid for by the developer. The inspector shall be assigned by the Lake County Surveyor's Office and contracted directly by the developer. No installation work may be performed without the inspector present.

Final acceptance of HDPE or PVC installations will not be given without 100% video record inspection and mandrel deflection testing. Both test shall be performed a minimum of 30 days *after* final cover is established. Mandrel testing procedures are provided in Appendix E.

J. Materials

Storm sewer manholes and inlets shall be constructed of cast in place concrete or precast reinforced concrete. Material and construction shall conform to the latest edition of the Indiana Department of Transportation (INDOT) "Standard Specifications", Sections 702 and 720.

Pipe and fittings used in storm sewer construction shall be extra-strength clay pipe (ASTM C-12), ductile iron pipe (AWWA C-151), poly vinyl chloride pipe (AASHTO M252), polyethylene pipe (AASHTO M252 or AASHTO M294), or concrete pipe (AASHTO M170). Other pipe and fittings not specified herein or in Sections 907-908 of the latest edition of the INDOT "Standard Specifications" may be used only when specifically authorized by the Lake County Surveyor.

Pipe joints shall be flexible and watertight and shall conform to the requirements of Section 906, of the latest edition of the INDOT "Standard Specifications".

The use of HDPE or PVC pipe shall be limited to 36 inches in diameter or less.

K. Special Hydraulic Structures

Special hydraulic structures required to control the flow of water in storm runoff drainage systems include junction chambers, drop manholes, stilling basins, and other special structures. The use of these structures shall be limited to those locations justified by prudent planning and by careful and thorough hydraulic engineering analysis. Certification of special structures by a certified Structural Engineer may also be required.

L. Connections to Storm Sewer System

To allow any connections to the storm sewer system, provisions for the connections shall be shown in the drainage calculations for the system. Specific language shall be provided in the protective covenants, on the record plat, or with the parcel deed of record, noting the ability or inability of the system to accommodate any permitted connections, for example, sump pumps and footing drains.

1. **Sump pumps** installed to receive and discharge groundwater or other stormwater shall be connected to the storm sewer where possible or discharged into a designated storm drainage channel/swale. Sump pumps installed to receive and discharge floor drain flow or other sanitary sewage shall be connected to the sanitary sewers. A sump pump shall be used for one function only, either the discharge of stormwater or the discharge of sanitary sewage.

2. **Footing drains and perimeter drains** shall be connected to Manholes or Curb inlets, where possible, or to designated storm sewers or discharged into designated storm drainage channels/swales.

3. All **roof downspouts**, roof drains, or roof drainage piping shall discharge onto the ground and shall not be directly connected to the storm drainage system. Variation from this requirement may be requested and granted by the Lake County Surveyor in special circumstances. No downspouts or roof drains shall be connected to the sanitary sewers.

4. **Swimming Pool drains** shall not be permanently connected to the storm sewers.

In addition, none of the above mentioned devices shall be connected to any street underdrains, unless specifically authorized by the Lake County Surveyor.

All connections to the storm sewer system shall be made at structures (e.g. manholes, inlets or catchbasins) and no “blind taps” shall be allowed. Connections to existing storm sewers must be permitted through the Surveyor’s Office and be performed by a licensed plumber. Please check with the Surveyor’s Office for the current permit fees.

M. Drainage System Overflow Design

Overflow path/ponding areas throughout the development resulting from a 100-year storm event, calculated based on all contributing drainage areas, on-site and off-site, in their proposed or reasonably anticipated land use and with storm pipe system assumed completely plugged, shall be determined, clearly shown as hatched area on the plans and plat, and a minimum width of 30 feet along the centerline of the flow path contained in permanent drainage easements. A statement shall be added to the plat that would refer the viewer to the construction plans to see the entire extent of overflow path as hatched areas. No fences or landscaping can be constructed within the easement areas that may impede the free flow of Stormwater. These areas are to be maintained by the property owners or be designated as common areas that are to be maintained by the homeowners association. The Lowest Adjacent Grade for all residential, commercial, or industrial buildings shall be set a minimum of 1 foot above the noted overflow path/ponding elevation.

The overflow path/ponding may be modeled as successive series of natural ponds and open channel segments. Ponds should be modeled similar to that discussed for modeling depressional areas in Chapter 7. Channels should be modeled according to modeling techniques discussed in Chapter 6. The calculations for determining the 100-year overflow path/ponding elevations may be based on hand calculation methods utilizing normal depth calculations and storage routing techniques or performed by computer models. Examples of computer models that either individually or in combination with other models can handle the required computations include TR-20, HEC-HMS, and HEC-1, combined with HEC-RAS. Other models may be acceptable and should be accepted by the Lake County Surveyor prior to their utilization.

Values in Table 5-4 may be utilized as an alternative to the above-noted detailed calculations for determining the required pad elevations of buildings near an overflow path.

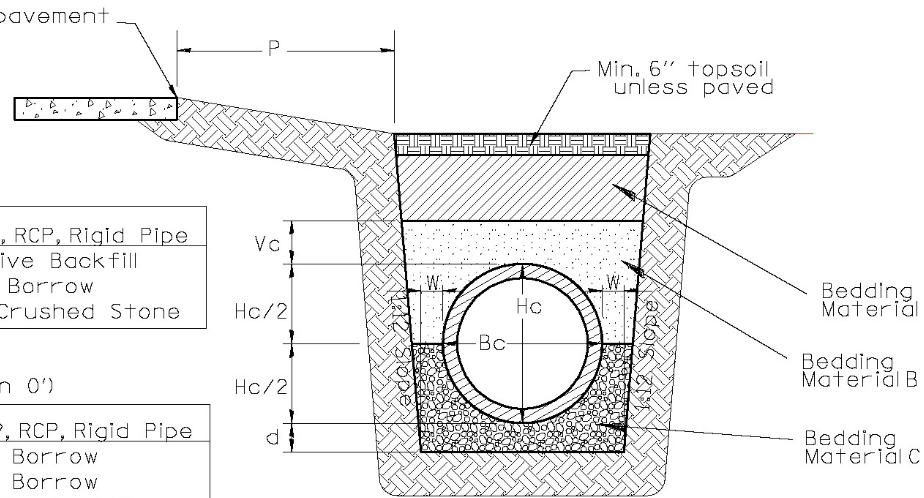
TABLE 5-4

Building Pad Elevations With Respect to Overflow Path Invert Elevations		
Drainage Area (acres)	**Building Pad Above Overflow Path Invert (ft.)**	**Building Pad Above Overflow Path Invert, if Overflow Path is in the Street (ft.)**
Up to 5	2.5	1.5
6-10	3.0	1.5
11-15	3.25	1.75
16-20	3.5	1.75
21-30	4.0	2.0
30-50	4.25	2.0

If Table 5-4 is used, the Lake County Surveyor reserves the right to require independent calculations to verify that the proposed building pads provide approximately 1 foot of freeboard above the anticipated overflow path/ponding elevations.

In the case of existing upstream detention, an allowance equivalent to the reduction in flow rate provided may be made for upstream detention only when: (1) such detention and release rate have previously been accepted by the Lake County Surveyor official charged with the approval authority at the time of the acceptance, and (2) evidence of its construction and maintenance can be shown.

FIGURE 5-1
Bedding and Backfill Standards for Storm Sewers



Bedding Material Designation
(P greater than 5')

	PVC, HDPE, Plastic Pipe	CMP, RCP, Rigid Pipe
Material A	Native Backfill	Native Backfill
Material B	#8 Crushed Stone	"B" Borrow
Material C	#8 Crushed Stone	#8 Crushed Stone

Bedding Material Designation
(P less than than 5', but greater than 0')

	PVC, HDPE, Plastic Pipe	CMP, RCP, Rigid Pipe
Material A	"B" Borrow	"B" Borrow
Material B	#8 Crushed Stone	"B" Borrow
Material C	#8 Crushed Stone	#8 Crushed Stone

Bedding Material Designation
(Pipe Under Pavement or Driveway)

	PVC, HDPE, Plastic Pipe	CMP, RCP, Rigid Pipe
Material A	Pipe Not Allowed	"B" Borrow
Material B		"B" Borrow
Material C		#8 Crushed Stone

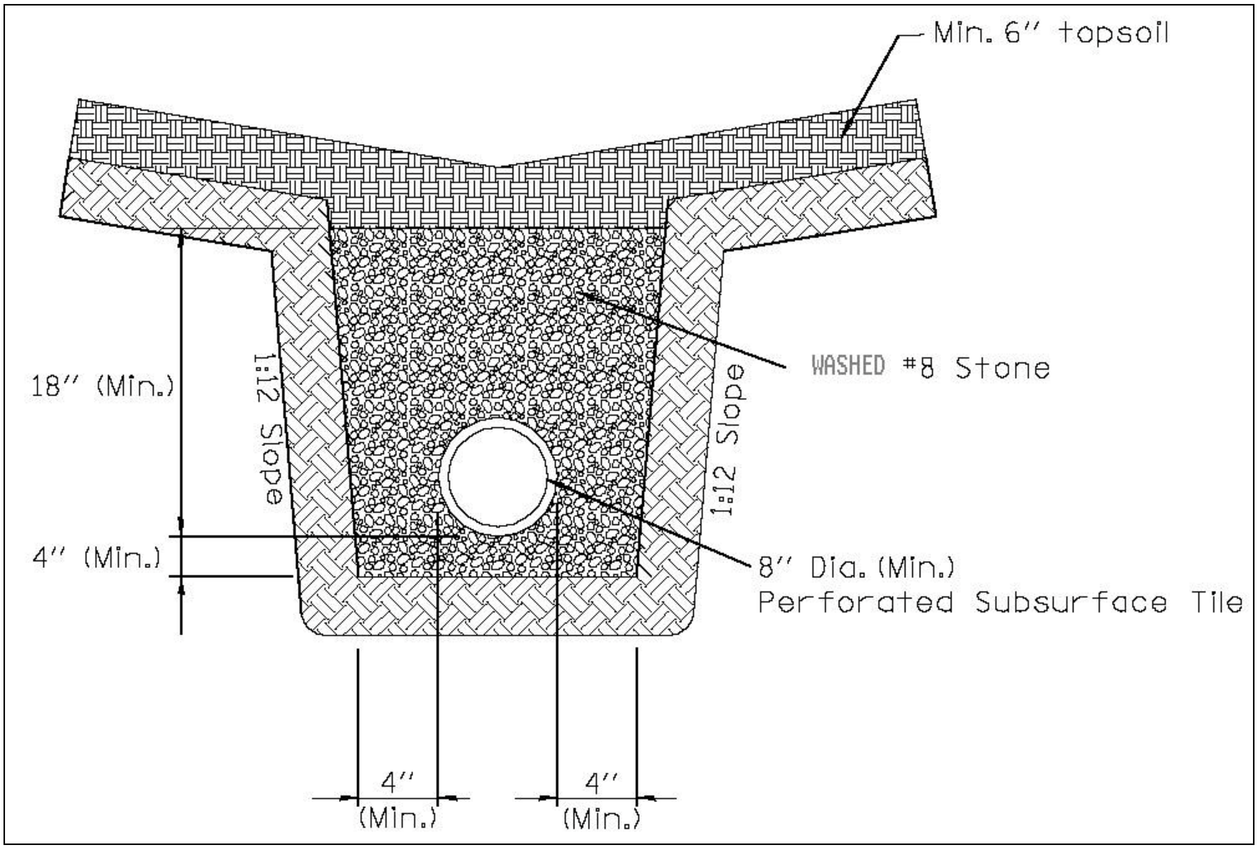
LEGEND

P = Distance from edge of pavement
Hc = Outside diameter or rise
Bc = Outside diameter or span
d = Depth of bedding material below pipe
= 8" min. for fill height up to 16'
= 12" min for fill height of 16' or more
Vc = 12" for Bc up to 18"
= 18" for Bc > 18"
W = 0.3 Bc or 9", whichever is greater

NOTES:

1. INDOT Type 1 pipe required for storm sewers/culverts under pavement
2.. INDOT Type 2 pipe required for storm sewers/culverts outside of pavement
3. All bedding shall be installed in 6" to 12" balanced lifts
4. For backfill purposes, paved shoulders, curbs, gutters, and sidewalkss are considered pavement
5. Flowable backfill shall be encased by a minimum of 2 feer of compacted earth backfill
6. Plastic pipes fabricated on hydrostatic design basis rated resins considered rigid for backfill purposes

FIGURE 5-2
Bedding and Backfill Standards for Sub-drains under Swales



CHAPTER SIX

OPEN CHANNEL DESIGN STANDARDS AND SPECIFICATIONS

All channels, whether private or public, and whether constructed on private or public land, shall conform to the design standards and other design requirements contained herein.

A. Design Storm Frequencies

1. All channels and swales shall accommodate, as a minimum, peak runoff from a 10-year return frequency storm calculated based on methodology described in Chapter 3. For Rational Method analysis, the storm duration shall be equal to the time of concentration for the drainage area. In computer-based analysis, the duration is as noted in the applicable methodology associated with the computer program.

2. Channels with a carrying capacity of more than 30 cfs at bank-full stage shall be capable of accommodating peak runoff for a 50-year return frequency storm within the drainage easement.

3. Channel facilities functioning as a major drainage system, as defined in **Appendix A**, must also meet IDNR design standards.

4. The 10-year storm design flow for residential rear and side lot swales shall not exceed 4 cfs. The maximum length of rear and side lot swales before reaching any inlet shall not exceed 400 feet.

5. Regardless of minimum design frequencies stated above, the performance of all parts of drainage system shall be checked for the 100-year flow conditions to insure that all buildings are properly located outside the 100-year flood boundary and that flow paths are confined to designated areas with sufficient easement.

B. Manning's Equation

The waterway area for channels shall be determined using Manning's Equation, where:

$$A = Q/V$$

A = Waterway area of channel in square feet

Q = Discharge in cubic feet per second (cfs)

V = Steady-State channel velocity, as defined by Manning's Equation (See Chapter 5)

C. Backwater Method for Drainage System Analysis

The determination of 100-year water surface elevation along channels and swales shall be based on accepted methodology and computer programs designed for this purpose. Computer programs HEC-RAS, HEC-2, and ICPR are preferred programs for conducting such backwater analysis. The use of other computer models must be accepted in advance by the Lake County Surveyor.

D. Channel Cross-Section and Grade

1. The required channel cross-section and grade are determined by the design capacity, the material in which the channel is to be constructed, and the requirements for maintenance. A minimum depth may be required to provide adequate outlets for subsurface drains, tributary ditches, or streams. The channel grade shall be such that the velocity in the channel is high enough to prevent siltation but low enough to prevent erosion. Velocities less than 2 feet per second are not acceptable, as siltation will take place and ultimately reduce the channel cross-section area. The maximum permissible velocities in vegetated-lined channels are shown in **Table 6-1.** In addition to existing runoff, the channel design should incorporate increased runoff due to the proposed development.

2. Where depth of design flow is slightly below critical depth, channels shall have freeboard adequate to cope with the effect of hydraulic jumps.

3. Along the streets and roads, the bottom of the ditch should be low enough to install adequately-sized driveway culverts without creating "speed bumps". The driveway culvert inverts shall be designed to adequately consider upstream and downstream culvert elevations.

4. Flow of a channel into a closed system is prohibited, unless runoff rate and head loss computations demonstrate the closed conduit to be capable of carrying the 100-year channel flow for developed conditions, either entirely or in combination with a defined overflow channel, with no reduction of velocity.

TABLE 6-1

Maximum Permissible Velocities in Vegetal-Lined Channels (1)			
Cover	Channel Slope Range (Percent) (3)	Permissible Velocity (2)	
		Erosion Resistant Soils (ft. per sec.) (4)	Easily Eroded Soils (ft. per sec.) (4)
Bermuda Grass	0-5 5-10 Over 10	8 7 6	6 5 4
Bahia Buffalo Grass Kentucky Bluegrass Smooth Brome Blue Grama	0-5 5-10 Over 10	7 6 5	5 4 3
Grass Mixture Reed Canary Grass	**(3)** 0-5 5-10	5 4	4 3
Lespedeza Sericea Weeping Lovegrass Yellow Bluestem Redtop Alfalfa Red Fescue	**(4)** 0-5 5-10	3.4	2.5
Common Lespedeza **(5)** Sudangrass **(5)**	**(6)** 0-5	3.5	2.5

(1) From Soil Conservation Service, SCS-TP-61, "Handbook of Channel Design for Soil and Water Conservation".

(2) Use velocities exceeding 5 feet per second only where good channel ground covers and proper maintenance can be obtained.

(3) Do not use on slopes steeper than 10 percent except for vegetated side slopes in combination with a stone, concrete, or highly resistant vegetative center section.

(4) Do not use on slopes steeper than 5 percent except for vegetated side slopes in combination with a stone, concrete, or highly resistant vegetative center section.

(5) Annuals - use on mild slopes or as temporary protection until permanent covers are established.

(6) Use on slopes steeper than 5 percent is not recommended.

E. Side Slopes

1. Earthen channel and swale side slopes shall be no steeper than 3 horizontal to 1 vertical (3:1). Flatter slopes may be required to prevent erosion and for ease of maintenance.

2. Where channels will be lined with riprap, concrete, or other acceptable lining method, side slopes shall be no steeper than 2 horizontal to 1 vertical (2:1) with adequate provisions made for weep holes.

3. Side slopes steeper than 2 horizontal to 1 vertical (2:1) may be used for lined channels provided that the side lining is designed and constructed as a structural retaining wall with provisions for live and dead load surcharge.

F. Channel Stability

1. Characteristics of a stable channel are:

   a] It neither promotes sedimentation nor degrades the channel bottom and sides.

   b] The channel banks do not erode to the extent that the channel cross-section is changed appreciably.

   c] Excessive sediment bars do not develop.

   d] Excessive erosion does not occur around culverts, bridges, outfalls or elsewhere.

   e] Gullies do not form or enlarge due to the entry of uncontrolled flow to the channel.

2. Channel stability shall be determined for an aged condition and the velocity shall be based on the design flow or the bankfull flow, whichever is greater, using an "n" value for various channel linings as shown in **Tables 5-1 and 6-1**. In no case is it necessary to check channel stability for discharges greater than that from a 100-year frequency storm.

3. Channel stability shall be checked for conditions representing the period immediately after construction. For this stability analysis, the velocity shall be calculated for the expected flow from a 10-year frequency storm on the watershed, or the bankfull flow, whichever is smaller, and the "n" value for the newly constructed channels in fine-grained soils and sands may be determined in accordance with the "National Engineering

Handbook 5, Supplement B, Soil Conservation Service" and shall not exceed 0.025. This reference may be obtained by contacting the National Technical Information Service in Springfield, VA. [webmaster@ntis.gov]. The allowable velocity in the newly constructed channel may be increased by a maximum of 20 percent to reflect the effects of vegetation to be established under the following conditions:

a] The soil and site in which the channel is to be constructed are suitable for rapid establishment and support of erosion controlling vegetation.

b] Species of erosion controlling vegetation adapted to the area, and proven methods of establishment are shown.

c] The channel design includes detailed plans for establishment of vegetation on the channel side slopes.

G. Drainage of Swales

Minimum swale slopes are 0.5%. All flow shall be confined to the specific easements associated with each rear and side lot swale that are part of the minor drainage system. Unless designed to act as a stormwater quality BMP, vegetated swales with a slope less than 1.5 % shall have tile underdrains to dry the swales. (See Figure 5-3). Tile lines may be outletted through a drop structure at the ends of the swale or through a standard tile outlet. Further guidance regarding this subject may be found in the latest edition of the Indiana Drainage Handbook.

H. Appurtenant Structures

The design of channels will include provisions for operation and maintenance and the proper functioning of all channels, laterals, travelways, and structures associated with the project. Recessed inlets and structures needed for entry of surface and subsurface flow into channels without significant erosion or degradation shall be included in the design of channel improvements. The design will also provide for necessary floodgates, water level control devices, and any other appurtenance structure affecting the functioning of the channels and the attainment of the purpose for which they are built.

The effects of channel improvements on existing culverts, bridges, buried cables, pipelines, and inlet structures for surface and subsurface drainage on the channel being improved and laterals thereto shall be evaluated to determine the need for modification or replacement. Culverts and bridges which are modified or added as part of channel improvement projects shall meet reasonable standards for the type of structure, and shall have a minimum capacity equal to the design discharge or governmental agency design requirements, whichever is greater.

I. Deposition of Spoil

Spoil material resulting from clearing, grubbing, and channel excavation shall be disposed of in a manner that will:

1. Minimize overbank wash.

2. Provide for the free flow of water between the channel and floodplain boundary unless the valley routing and water surface profiles are based on continuous dikes being installed.

3. Not hinder the development of travelways for maintenance.

4. Leave the right-of-way in the best condition feasible, consistent with the project purposes, for productive use by the owner.

5. Be accepted by the IDNR, IDEM or COE, if applicable.

6. Spoil from any excavation shall not be placed such that existing flow of surface water onto or from the property shall be impacted without mitigation actions approved in writing by the Lake County Surveyor's Office.

J. Materials

Materials acceptable for use as channel lining are:

1. Grass
2. Revetment Riprap
3. Concrete
4. Hand Laid Riprap
5. Precast Cement Concrete Riprap
6. Gabions
7. Straw, Coconut Mattings or blankets approved by the Lake County Surveyor's Office (only until grass is established)

Other lining materials must be accepted in writing by the Lake County Surveyor. Materials shall comply with the latest edition of the INDOT, "Standard Specifications".

K. Drainage System Overflow Design

Ponding and overflow path throughout the development resulting from a 100-year storm event, calculated based on all contributing drainage areas, on-site and off-site, in their proposed or reasonably anticipated land use and with storm pipe system assumed completely plugged, shall be determined, clearly shown as hatched area on the plans, and a 30 feet along the centerline of the overflow path contained in permanent drainage easements. *A statement shall be added to the plat that would refer the viewer to the construction plans to see the entire extent of overflow path as hatched areas.* No fences or landscaping can be constructed within the easement areas that may impede the free flow of Stormwater. These areas are to be maintained by the property owners or be designated as common areas that are to be maintained by the homeowners association. The Lowest Adjacent Grade for all residential, commercial, or industrial buildings shall be set a minimum of 1 foot above the noted overflow path/ponding elevation.

The overflow path/ponding may be modeled as successive series of natural ponds and open channel segments. Ponds should be modeled similar to that discussed for modeling depressional areas in Chapter 7. Channels should be modeled according to modeling techniques discussed earlier in this Chapter. The calculations for determining the 100-year overflow path/ponding elevations may be based on hand calculation methods utilizing normal depth calculations and storage routing techniques or performed by computer models. Examples of computer models that either individually or in combination with other models can handle the required computations include TR-20, HEC-HMS, and HEC-1, combined with HEC-RAS. Other models may be acceptable and should be accepted by the Lake County Surveyor prior to their utilization.

Values in Table 5-4 may be utilized as an alternative to the above-noted detailed calculations for determining the required pad elevations of buildings near an overflow path.

If Table 5-4 is used, the Lake County Surveyor reserves the right to require independent calculations to verify that the proposed building pads provide approximately 1 foot of freeboard above the anticipated overflow path/ponding elevations.

In the case of existing upstream detention, an allowance equivalent to the reduction in flow rate provided may be made for upstream detention only when: (1) such detention and release rate have previously been accepted by the Lake County Surveyor official charged with the approval authority at the time of the acceptance, and (2) evidence of its construction and maintenance can be shown.

CHAPTER SEVEN
STORMWATER DETENTION DESIGN STANDARDS

The following shall govern the design of any improvement with respect to the detention of stormwater runoff. Basins shall be constructed to temporarily detain the stormwater runoff that exceeds the maximum peak release rate authorized by this Ordinance. The required volume of storage provided in these basins, together with such storage as may be authorized in other on-site facilities, shall be sufficient to control excess runoff from the 10-year or 100-year storm as explained below in Section "B.". Also, basins shall be constructed to provide adequate capacity to allow for sediment accumulation resulting from development and to permit the pond to function for reasonable periods between cleanings.

A. Acceptable Detention Facilities

The increased stormwater runoff resulting from a proposed development should be detained on-site by the provisions of appropriate wet bottom or dry bottom detention facilities, parking lots, or other acceptable techniques. Measures that retard the rate of overland flow and the velocity in runoff channels shall also be used to partially control runoff rates.

B. Allowable Release Rates

1. General Release Rates
   Control devices shall limit the discharge to a rate such that the post-developed release rate from the site is no greater than 0.2 cfs per acre of development for 0-100 year return interval storms. For sites where the pre-developed area has more than one (1) outlet, the release rate should be computed based on pre-developed discharge to each outlet point. The computed release rate for each outlet point shall not be exceeded at the respective outlet point even if the post developed conditions would involve a different arrangement of outlet points.

2. Site-Specific Release Rates for Sites with Depressional Storage
   For sites where depressional storage exists, the general release rates provided above may have to be further reduced. If depressional storage exists at the site, site-specific release rates must be calculated according to methodology described in Chapter 3, accounting for the depressional storage by modeling it as a pond whose outlet is a weir at an elevation that stormwater can currently overflow the depressional storage area. Post developed release rate for sites with depressional storage shall be the 2-year pre-developed peak runoff rate for the post-developed 100-year storm. In no case shall the calculated site-specific release rates be larger than general release rates provided above.

Note that by definition, the depressional storage does not have a direct gravity outlet but if in agricultural production, it is more than likely drained by a tile and should be modeled as “empty” at the beginning of a storm. The function of any existing depressional storage should be modeled using an event hydrograph model to determine the volume of storage that exists and its effect on the existing site release rate. To prepare such a model, certain information must be obtained, including delineating the tributary drainage area, the stage-storage relationship and discharge-rating curve, and identifying the capacity and elevation of the outlet(s).

The tributary area should be delineated on the best available topographic data. After determining the tributary area, a hydrologic analysis of the watershed should be performed, including, but not limited to: a calculation of the appropriate composite runoff curve number and time of concentration. Stage-storage data for the depressional area should be obtained from the site topography. The outlet should be clearly marked and any calculations performed to create a stage-discharge rating curve must be included with the stormwater submittal.

Also note that for determining the post-developed peak runoff rates, the depressional storage must be assumed to be filled unless the Lake County Surveyor can be assured, *through dedicated easement*, that the noted storage will be preserved in perpetuity as part of the stormwater management system.

3. Management of Off-site Runoff

Runoff from all upstream tributary areas (off-site land areas) may be bypassed around the detention/retention facility without attenuation. Such runoff may also be routed through the detention/retention facility, provided that a separate outlet system or channel is incorporated for the safe passage of such flows, i.e., not through the primary outlet of a detention facility. Unless the pond is being designed as a regional detention facility, the primary outlet structure shall be sized and the invert elevation of the emergency overflow weir determined according to the on-site runoff only. Once the size and location of primary outlet structure is determined by considering on-site runoff, the 100-year pond elevation is determined by routing the entire inflow, on-site and off-site, through the pond. The resulting elevation shall be the elevation of the emergency overflow. All off-site runoff must be routed through a different outlet than the emergency overflow.

Note that the efficiency of the detention/retention facility in controlling the on-site runoff may be severely affected if the off-site area is considerably larger than the on-site area. As a general guidance, on-line detention may not be effective in controlling on-site runoff where the ratio of off-site area to on-site area is larger than 5:1. Additional detention (above and beyond that required for on-site area) may be required by the Lake County Surveyor when the ratio of off-site area to on-site area is larger than 5:1.

4. Downstream Restrictions

In the event the downstream receiving channel or storm sewer system is inadequate to accommodate the post-developed release rate provided above, then the allowable release rate shall be reduced to that rate permitted by the capacity of the receiving downstream channel or storm sewer system. Additional detention, as determined by the Lake County Surveyor, shall be required to store that portion of the runoff exceeding the capacity of the receiving sewers or waterways. When such downstream restrictions are suspected, the Lake County Surveyor may require additional analysis to determine the receiving system's limiting downstream capacity.

If the proposed development makes up only a portion of the undeveloped watershed upstream of the limiting restriction, the allowable release rate for the development shall be in direct proportion to the ratio of its drainage area to the drainage area of the entire watershed upstream of the restriction.

C. General Detention Basin Design Requirements

1. The detention facility shall be designed in such a manor that a minimum of 90% of the maximum volume of water stored and subsequently released at the design release rate shall not result in a storage duration in excess of 48 hours from the start of the storm unless additional storms occur within the period. In other words, the design shall ensure that a minimum 90% of the original detention capacity is restored within 48 hours from the start of the design 100-year storm. If the restoration of 90% of the original detention capacity within 48 hours cannot be achieved without an increase in the allowable release rate (as determined by the Lake County Surveyor), then additional storage volume may be required by the Lake County Surveyor to provide the 90% storage volume within 48 hours.

2. The 100-year elevation of stormwater detention facilities shall be separated by not less than 25 feet from any building or structure to be occupied. The Lowest Adjacent Grade (including walkout basement floor elevation) for all residential, commercial, or industrial buildings shall be set a minimum of 2 feet above the 100-year pond elevation or 2 feet above the emergency overflow weir elevation, whichever is higher. In addition to the Lowest Adjacent Grade requirements, any basement floor must be at least a foot above the normal water level of any wet-bottom pond. A note

should be included on the plans and plat listing the minimum basement floor elevation for each lot adjacent to stormwater facilities.

3. No detention facility or other water storage area, permanent or temporary, shall be constructed under or within twenty (20) feet of any pole or high voltage electric line. Likewise, poles or high voltage electric lines shall not be placed within twenty (20) feet of any detention facility or other water storage area.

4. All stormwater detention facilities shall be separated from any road right-of-way by no less than one right-of-way width, measured from the top of bank or the 100-year pool if no defined top of bank is present, using the most restrictive right-of-way possible. If the width of the right-of-way is less than 50 feet, then the minimum distance between top of bank and road right-of-way shall be increased to 50 feet. Use of guard rails, berms, or other structural measures may be considered in lieu of the above-noted setbacks but must be approved by the Lake County Surveyor on a case-by-case basis.

5. Slopes no steeper than 3 horizontal to 1 vertical (3:1) for safety, erosion control, stability, and ease of maintenance shall be permitted.

6. Safety screens having a maximum opening of four (4) inches shall be provided for any pipe or opening to prevent children or large animals from crawling into the structures.

7. Prior to final acceptance, danger signs shall be mounted at appropriate locations to warn of deep water, possible flood conditions during storm periods, and other dangers that exist. The locations of the noted danger signs shall be shown on the plans. Sufficient signs should be placed such that one will be visible from each direction of pedestrian approach. *At a minimum, these should be placed at corners and spacing of no less than 100 feet.*

8. Use of fences around detention ponds is strongly encouraged when specific safety concerns are identified by the developer or the Lake County Surveyor's Office.

   Unless specifically required by the Lake County Surveyor, the decision to use fencing around detention ponds are left to the owner or the developer. Recommendations contained within this document do not relieve the applicant and owner/developer from the responsibility of taking all necessary steps to ensure public safety with regards to such facilities.

9. Outlet control structures shall be designed to operate as simply as possible and shall require little or no maintenance and/or attention for proper

operation. For maintenance purposes, the outlet shall be a minimum of 0.5 foot above the normal water level of the receiving water body. They shall limit discharges into existing or planned downstream channels or conduits so as not to exceed the predetermined maximum authorized peak flow rate. Measures to prevent blockage of small orifices (<6 in.) must be included on the plans.

10. Emergency overflow facilities such as a weir or spillway shall be provided for the release of exceptional storm runoff or in emergency conditions should the normal discharge devices become totally or partially inoperative. The overflow facility shall be of such design that its operation is automatic and does not require manual attention.

    a] Off-site flows greater than the allowable release rate for the pond shall be conveyed through the emergency spillway, <u>not</u> through the primary outlet structure. Unless the pond is being designed as a regional detention facility, the primary outlet structure shall be sized and the invert elevation of the emergency overflow weir determined according to the on-site runoff only and all other flows shall be either retained or safely bypassed through the emergency overflow weir.

    b] Emergency overflow facilities shall be designed to handle one and one-quarter (1.25) times the peak inflow discharge to the detention facility and peak flow velocity resulting from the 100-year design storm event runoff from the entire contributing watershed draining to the detention/retention facility, assuming post-development condition on-site and existing condition off-site.

11. Grass or other suitable vegetative cover shall be provided along the banks of the detention storage basin. Vegetative cover around detention facilities should be maintained as appropriate.

12. Debris and trash removal and other necessary maintenance shall be performed on a regular basis to assure continued operation in conformance to design.

13. No residential lots or any part thereof, shall be used for any part of a detention basin or for the storage of water, either temporary or permanent.

D. Additional Requirements for Wet-Bottom Facility Design

Where part of a detention facility will contain a permanent pool of water, all the items required for detention storage shall apply. Also, a controlled positive outlet will be required to maintain the design water level in the wet bottom facility and provide required detention storage above the design water level. However, the following additional conditions shall apply:

1. Facilities designed with permanent pools or containing permanent lakes shall have a water area of at least one-half (0.5) acre and a minimum depth of eight (8) feet. If fish are to be used to keep the pond clean, a minimum depth of approximately ten (10) feet shall be maintained over at least 25 percent of the pond area. The remaining pond area shall have no extensive shallow areas, except as required to install the safety ramp, safety ledge, and BMPs as required below. Construction trash or debris shall not be placed within the permanent pool.

2. A safety ledge six (6) to ten (10) feet in width, depending on the presence of a security fence, is recommended and should be installed in all lakes approximately 18 inches below the permanent water level (normal pool elevation). In addition, a similar maintenance ledge 12 inches above the permanent water line shall be provided. The slope between the two ledges shall be stable and of a material such as stone or riprap which will prevent erosion due to wave action. The slopes below the safety ledge shall be 3:1 (horizontal to vertical) or flatter. The slopes above the safety ledge shall be 6:1 or flatter, unless a safety fence is used, in which case the side slopes above the safety ledge (except for the safety ramp area) shall be 3:1 or flatter.

   As illustrated in Figures 7-1 and 7-2, the safety ledge is currently required to be 18 inches below the normal pool and 6-10 feet wide, depending on the presence of a security fence. As an alternative to providing a security fence, the depth of safety ledge could be changed to be anywhere from 0 to 6 inches below normal pool to encourage vegetation growth. Wetland plants can be installed as container grown plants or as seed at the time of construction, or the area can be left to be naturally colonized. When a vegetated ledge is used in lieu of a security fence, the safety ledge width shall be increased to 15 feet to allow more room to stop in the event of accidental entry into the pond. The vegetated ledge might discourage play near the edge of the pond and help stop a wayward bike or sled. Additional benefits to the vegetated ledge are stormwater quality improvement and goose deterrence. In lieu of a vegetated safety ledge, a zone of dense shrubs could be installed around the perimeter of the pond to discourage access. Shrubs and vines with briars and thorns or dense growth patterns make good deterrents.

Special Regulatory Note:

Detention ponds that include wetland features will not fall within the jurisdiction of IDEM or COE as long as:

- The pond is clearly identified on plans and in accompanying documentation as a stormwater treatment Best Management Practice (BMP).
- The pond has not been abandoned, and is maintained as originally designed.
- The pond is not part of required wetland mitigation.
- Construction of the pond does not impact existing jurisdictional wetlands or waterways.

Therefore, detention pond maintenance would not require a permit just because wetland features have been included in their construction.

In lieu of a vegetated safety ledge, a zone of dense shrubs could be installed around the perimeter of the pond to discourage access. Shrubs and vines with briars and thorns or dense growth patterns make good deterrents.

3. If a retaining wall is utilized, the wall shall have either steps or a ladder incorporated into the construction at the center of the wall as a means of egress.

4. A safety access ramp exit from the lake shall be required in all cases and shall have a minimum width of twenty (20) feet and exit slope of 6 horizontal to 1 vertical (6:1). The safety ramp shall be constructed of suitable material to prevent structural instability due to vehicles or wave action.

5. Periodic maintenance is required in lakes to control weed and larval growth. The facility shall also be designed to provide for the easy removal of sediment that will accumulate during periods of reservoir operation. A means of maintaining the designed water level of the lake during prolonged periods of dry weather may also be required.

6. Methods to prevent pond stagnation, including but not limited to aeration facilities, shall be included on all wet-bottom ponds. Design calculations to substantiate the effectiveness of proposed aeration facilities shall be submitted with final engineering plans. Agreements for the perpetual operation and maintenance of aeration facilities shall be prepared to the satisfaction of the Lake County Surveyor.

7. For visual clarification, refer to **Figures 7-1** and **7-2**.

E. Additional Requirements for Dry-Bottom Facility Design

In addition to general design requirements, detention facilities that will not contain a permanent pool of water shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Provisions shall be incorporated into facilities for complete interior drainage of dry bottom facilities, including the provisions of natural grades to outlet structures, longitudinal and transverse grades to perimeter drainage facility, paved gutters, or the installation of subsurface drains. Longitudinal grades less than one and one-half (1.5) percent shall include a 6-inch underdrain with 1.5 feet of cover. The underdrain shall be designed and installed with reference to the NRCS field manual and ASTM F449.

2. For residential developments, the maximum planned depth of stormwater stored shall not exceed four (4) feet.

3. In excavated detention facilities, a minimum side slope of 3:1 shall be provided for stability. In the case of valley storage, natural slopes may be considered to be stable.

F. Parking Lot Storage

Paved parking lots may be designed to provide temporary detention storage of stormwater on all or a portion of their surfaces. Outlets for parking lot storage of stormwater will be designed so as to empty the stored waters slowly. Depths of storage shall be limited to a maximum depth of seven (7) inches so as to prevent damage to parked vehicles and so that access to parked vehicles is not impaired. Ponding should in general, be confined to those positions of the parking lots farthest from the area served. The 100-year inundation boundary shall be determined and clearly delineated on the plan sheets.

G. Detention Facilities in Floodplains

If detention storage is provided within a 100-year floodplain, only the net increase in storage volume above that which naturally existed on the floodplain shall be credited to the development. In order to be hydraulically effective, the rim elevation of such detention pond, including any open spillways, should be at or above the 100-year floodplain elevation and, unless the detention pond storage is provided entirely above the 100-year flood elevation, any pipe outlets must be equipped with a backflow prevention device. A detention pond constructed within the 100-year floodplain and utilizing a backflow prevention device will eliminate the floodplain storage that existed on the detention pond site, and will therefore require compensatory floodplain storage. The detention analysis for a detention pond in the floodplain must consider appropriate tailwater impacts and the effect of any backflow prevention device.

FIGURE 7-1
Wet –Bottom Detention Facility – With Fence

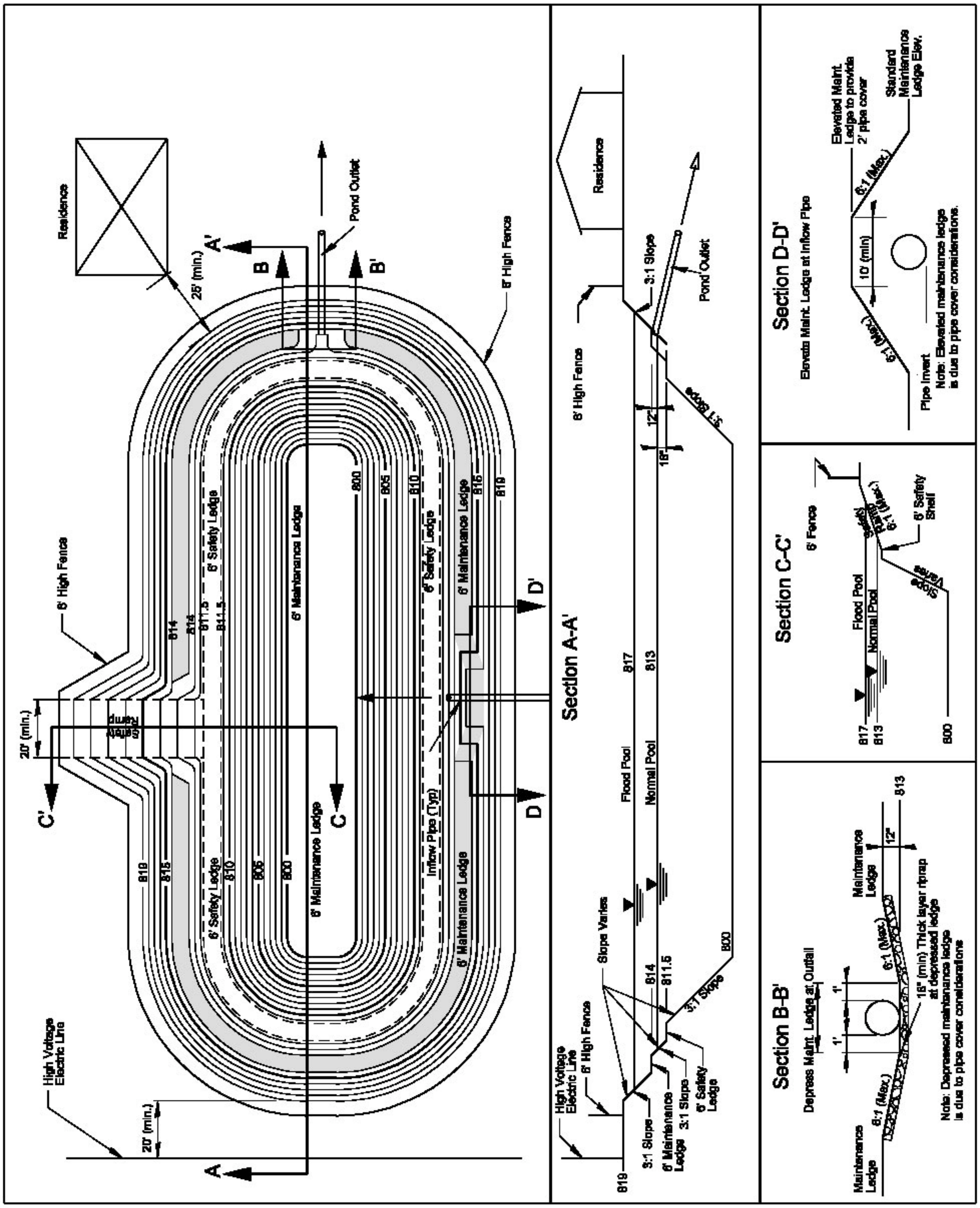
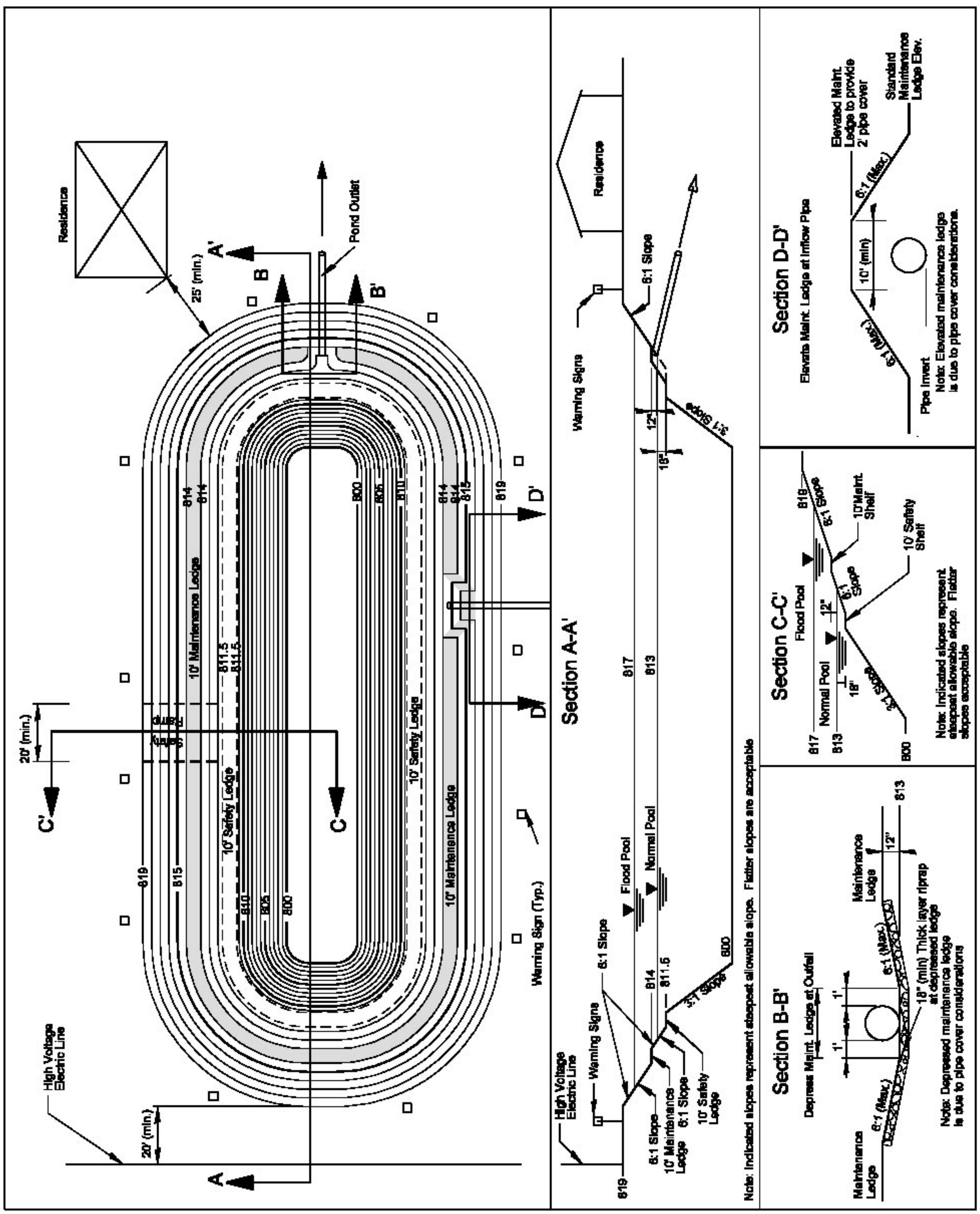


FIGURE 7-2
Wet –Bottom Detention Facility – Without Fence



H. Joint Development of Control Systems

Stormwater control systems may be planned and constructed jointly by two or more developers as long as compliance with this Ordinance is maintained.

I. Diffused Outlets

When the allowable runoff is released in an area that is susceptible to flooding or erosion, the developer may be required to construct appropriate storm drains through such area to avert increased flood hazard caused by the concentration of allowable runoff at one point instead of the natural overland distribution. The requirement of diffused outlet drains shall be at the discretion of the Lake County Surveyor.

J. IDNR Requirements

All designs for basins to be constructed in the floodway of a stream with a drainage area of one square mile or more must also satisfy IDNR permit requirements.

K. Allowance for Sedimentation

Detention basins shall be designed with an additional ten (10) percent of available capacity to allow for sediment accumulation resulting from development and to permit the pond to function for reasonable periods between cleanings. Basins should be designed to collect sediment and debris in specific locations, such as a forebay, so that removal costs are kept to a minimum. For wet-bottom ponds, the sediment allowance may be provided below the permanent pool elevation. No construction trash or debris shall be allowed to be placed within the permanent pool. If the pond is used as a sediment control measure during active construction, the performance sureties will not be released until sediment has been cleaned out of the pond and elevations and grades have been reestablished as noted in the accepted plans.

CHAPTER EIGHT
EROSION CONTROL PRACTICES AND CONSTRUCTION PHASE BMPs

The requirements contained in this chapter are intended to prevent stormwater pollution resulting from soil erosion and sedimentation or from mishandling of solid and hazardous waste. Practices and measures included herein should assure that no foreign substance, (e.g. sediment, construction debris, chemicals) be transported from a site and allowed to enter any drainageway, whether intentionally or accidentally, by machinery, wind, rain, runoff, or other means.

A. POLLUTANTS OF CONCERN DURING CONSTRUCTION

The major pollutant of concern during construction is sediment. Natural erosion processes are accelerated at a project site by the construction process for a number of reasons, including the loss of surface vegetation and compaction damage to the soil structure itself, resulting in reduced infiltration and increased surface runoff. Clearing and grading operations also expose subsoils which are often poorly suited to re-establish vegetation, leading to longer term erosion problems.

Problems associated with construction site erosion include: transport of pollutants attached to transported sediment; increased turbidity (reduced light) in receiving waters; recreational use impairment. The deposited sediment may pose direct toxicity to wildlife, or smother existing spawning areas and habitat. This siltation also reduces the capacity of waterways, resulting in increased flood hazards to the public.

Other pollutants of concern during the construction process are hazardous wastes or hydrocarbons associated with the construction equipment or processes. Examples include concrete washoff, paints, solvents, and hydrocarbons from refueling operations. Poor control and handling of toxic construction materials pose an acute (short-term) or chronic (long-term) risk of death to both aquatic life, wildlife, and the general public.

B. EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The following principles should govern erosion and sediment control practices on all sites:

Sediment-laden water flowing from the site shall be treated by water quality management practices appropriate to minimize sedimentation downstream.

Water shall not be discharged in a manner that causes erosion at or downstream of the point of discharge.

All access to building sites that cross a natural watercourse, drainage easement, or swale/channel shall have a culvert of appropriate size.

Wastes or unused building materials, including but not limited to garbage, debris, cleaning wastes, wastewater, toxic materials, and hazardous substances, shall not be carried by runoff from a site. All wastes shall be disposed of in a proper manner. No construction trash or debris shall be allowed to be placed within the permanent pool of the detention/retention ponds. If the pond is used as a sediment control measure during active construction, the performance sureties will not be released until sediment has been cleaned out of the pond and elevations and grades have been reestablished as noted in the accepted plans.

Sediment being tracked from a site onto public or private roadways shall be minimized. This can be accomplished initially by a temporary gravel construction entrance, in addition to a well-planned layout of roads, access drives, and parking areas.

Public or private roadways shall be kept cleared of accumulated sediment. Bulk clearing of sediment shall NOT include flushing the area with water.

All ALL storm drain inlets shall be protected against sedimentation with barriers meeting accepted criteria, standards and specifications (see Appendix C).

Runoff passing through a site from adjacent areas shall be controlled by diverting it around disturbed areas, where practical. Diverted runoff shall be conveyed in a manner that will not erode the channel and receiving areas. Alternatively, the existing channel may be left undisturbed or improved to prevent erosion or sedimentation from occurring.

Drainageways and swales shall be designed and adequately protected so that their final gradients and resultant velocities will not cause channel or outlet scouring.

All ALL disturbed ground left inactive for fifteen (15) or more days shall be stabilized by seeding, sodding, mulching, covering, or by other equivalent erosion control measures.

Appropriate sediment control practices shall be installed prior to any land disturbance and thereafter whenever necessary.

During the period of construction activity at a site, erosion control measures necessary to meet the requirements of the Stormwater Management and Clean Water Regulations Ordinance of Lake County, Indiana shall meet the design criteria, standards, and specifications as those outlined in the Lake County, Indiana Stormwater Technical Standards and Clean Water Regulations Manual this Ordinance shall be maintained by the applicant.

At a minimum, ALL stormwater pollution prevention plans (SWPPPs) shall include:

- Location for posting of all permits
- Construction sequencing
- Spill Prevention and control
- Stabile construction ingress / egress
- Perimeter sediment control
- Surface stabilization including water ways

- Inlet protection

Inspection checklists including weekly

C. COMMON CONTROL PRACTICES

All erosion control and stormwater pollution prevention measures required to comply with this the Stormwater Management and Clean Water Regulations Ordinance of Lake County Ordinance shall meet the design criteria, standards, and specifications as those outlined in the Lake County, Indiana Stormwater Technical Standards and Clean Water Regulations Manual or as required by the manufacturer. Other practices not addressed in the manual may be approved on a case-by-case basis by the Lake County Surveyor. The design engineer should contact the Surveyor's Office prior to plan submission to initiate a review and subsequent approval of the proposed practice. Table 8-1 and Appendix C lists the practices and specifications for preventing stormwater pollution from construction sites. Details of each practice may also be found in Appendix C. These practices should be used to protect *every* potential pollution pathway to stormwater conveyances.

Table 8-1

Stormwater Pollution Control Practices for Construction Sites

Stormwater Pollution Generating Activity Description	***Mitigation Practices***	***Practice Sheet***
Sheet Flow		
(including back of curb)	Settling – Belted Geotextile Fence	CN 107
	Sediment Filtration / Settling	CN 119
		CN 111
Shallow Concentrated Flow		
	Stabilization – Erosion Control Blanket	CN 108
Channel Flow		
	Check Dams	CN 110
	Stabilization – Turf Reinforcement Mat	CN 109
	Stabilization – Erosion Control Blanket	CN 108

Stormwater Pollution Generating Activity Description	***Mitigation Practices***	***Practice Sheet***
Bank Protection	Stabilization – Turf Reinforcement Mat	CN 109
	Stabilization – Erosion Control Blanket	CN 108
Slope Protection		
	Sediment Filtration / Settling	CN 111
	Stabilization – Turf Reinforcement Mats	CN 109
Inlet Protection		
	Catchbasin Inserts	CN 112
Pumping		
	Dewatering Bags	CN 117
Outlet Protection		
	Pipe Endsection	
	Surface Stabilizing Blankets	CN 113
Vehicle / Equipment Site Access		
	Temporary Construction Entrance	CN 114
Concrete Truck Washout		
	Concrete Washout Basin	CN 116
Turbid Runoff (with Suspended Soil)		
	Flocculation and Settling	CN 118
Construction		

Stormwater Pollution Generating Activity Description	***Mitigation Practices***	***Practice Sheet***
Traffic / Wind Soil Suspension (Dust)		
	Dust Suppression	CN 115

D. INDIVIDUAL LOT CONTROLS

Although individual lots within a larger development may not appear to contribute as much sediment as the overall development, the cumulative effect of lot development is of concern. From the time construction on an individual lot begins, until the individual lot is stabilized, the builder must take steps to:

- protect adjacent properties from sedimentation;
- prevent mud/sediment from depositing on the street;
- protect drainageways from erosion and sedimentation;
- prevent sediment laden water from entering storm sewer inlets.

This can be accomplished using numerous erosion and sediment control measures. A standard erosion control plan for individual lots is provided in Appendix B and on the Lake County Surveyor's website (*http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org*). The standard plan includes perimeter silt fence, stabilized construction entrance, curb inlet protection, drop inlet protection, stockpile containment, stabilized drainage swales, downspout extensions, temporary seeding and mulching, and permanent vegetation. Every relevant measure should be installed at each individual lot site.

Construction sequence on individual lots should be as follows:

- Clearly delineate areas of trees, shrubs, and vegetation that are to be undisturbed. To prevent root damage, the areas delineated for tree protection should be at least the same diameter as the crown.
- Install perimeter silt fence at construction limits. Position the fence to intercept runoff prior to entering drainage swales.
- Avoid disturbing drainage swales if vegetation is established. If drainage swales are bare, install erosion control blankets or sod to immediately stabilize.
- Install drop inlet protection for all inlets on the property.
- Install curb inlet protection, on both sides of the road, for all inlets along property frontage and the along the frontage of adjacent lots.
- Install gravel construction entrance that extends from the street to the building pad.
- Perform primary grading operations.
- Contain erosion from any soil stockpiles created on-site with silt fence around the base.
- Establish temporary seeding and straw mulch on disturbed areas.
- Construct the home and install utilities.

- Install downspout extenders once the roof and gutters have been constructed. Extenders should outlet to a stabilized area.
- Re-seed any areas disturbed by construction and utilities installation with temporary seed mix within 3 days of completion of disturbance.
- Grade the site to final elevations.
- Install permanent seeding or sod.

All erosion and sediment control measures must be properly maintained throughout construction. Temporary and permanent seeding should be watered as needed until established. For further information on individual lot erosion and sediment control, please see the "Individual Lot Erosion and Sediment Control Plan and Certification" form in Appendix B or the IDNR, Division of Soil Conservation's pamphlet titled "Erosion and Sediment control for Individual Building Sites".

CHAPTER NINE
POST-CONSTRUCTION WATER QUALITY BMPs

A. INTRODUCTION

Lake County has adopted a policy that the control of stormwater runoff quality will be primarily based on the management of Total Suspended Solids (TSS) with secondary consideration of floatable material. These requirements are being adopted as the basis of the Lake County stormwater quality management program for all areas of jurisdiction.

This section of the manual establishes minimum standards for the selection and design of construction water quality BMPs. The information provided in this chapter establishes performance criteria for stormwater quality management and procedures to be followed when preparing a BMP plan for compliance. Post-Construction BMPs must be sized to treat the water quality volume, WQv, for detention-based BMPs or the water quality discharge, Qwq, for flow-through BMPs. Chapter 10 provides the methodology for calculating the WQv and Qwq values.

BMPs noted in this chapter refer to post-construction BMPs, which continue to treat stormwater after construction has been completed and the site has been stabilized. Installing certain BMPs, such as bioretention areas and sand filters, prior to stabilization can cause failure of the measure due to clogging from sediment. If such BMPs are installed prior to site stabilization, they should be protected by traditional erosion control measures.

Conversely, detention ponds and other BMPs can be installed during construction and used as sediment control measures. In those instances, the construction sequence must require that the pond is cleaned out with pertinent elevations and storage and treatment capacities reestablished as noted in the accepted stormwater management plan.

All post-construction BMPs shall be placed upstream of detention facilities unless the detention facility is designed as part of the treatment train. Post-construction BMPs shall not be located downstream of detention facilities.

B. INNOVATIVE BMPs

BMPs not previously accepted by the Lake County Surveyor must be certified by a professional engineer licensed in State of Indiana and accepted through the Lake County Surveyor. ASTM standard methods or other methods approved by the Lake County Surveyor must be followed when verifying performance of new measures. New BMPs, individually or in combination, must meet the 80% TSS removal rate at 50-125 micron range (silt/fine sand) without reintrainment, must have a low to medium maintenance requirement and must capture floatable material from the "first flush" to be considered by the Lake County Surveyor. Testing to establish the TSS removal rate must be conducted by an independent testing facility, not the BMP manufacturer.

C. PRE-APROVED BMPs

Lake County has designated 12 pre-approved BMP methods to be used alone or in combination to achieve the 80% TSS removal stormwater quality goals for a given project. These BMP measures are listed along with their anticipated average TSS removal rates in **Table 9-1**. Pre-approved BMPs have been proven/are assumed to achieve the average TSS removal rates indicated in Table 9-1. Applicants desiring to use a different TSS removal rate for these BMPs must follow the requirements discussed above for Innovative BMPs. Details regarding the applicability and design of these pre-approved BMPs are contained within fact sheets presented in **Appendix D**.

Note that a single BMP measure may not be adequate to achieve the water quality goals for a project. It is for this reason that a "treatment train", a number of BMPs in series, is often required for a project. The pollutant removal efficiency of a number of BMPs in a series may be determined from the following formula:

$E_{series} = 1-(1-E_1)(1-E_2)(1-E_3)….$

Where;

E_{series} = Removal Efficiency of the BMP series combined (in decimal form)

$E_1, E_2, E_3,…$ = Removal Efficiency of Units 1, 2, 3,…, respectively (in decimal form)

TABLE 9-1
Pre-approved Post-construction BMPs

BMP [A]	**Typical % Removal Efficiency** [B] **(TSS)**
Bioretention	90[C]
Constructed Wetland	67[C]
Underground Detention	70
Extended Detention/Dry Pond	72
Infiltration Basin	87
Infiltration Trench	90[C]
Constructed (Sand) Filter	70[C]
Water Quality Device	NA[D]
Vegetated Filter Strip	78[C]
Vegetated Swale	81[C]
Wet Ponds/Retention Basin	80

Notes:

A. Detailed specifications for these BMPs are provided in the fact sheets contained in Appendix 702-1.

B. Removal rates shown are based on typical results. Unless otherwise shown, data extracted by CBBEL from various data sources. These rates are also dependent on proper installation and maintenance. The ultimate responsibility for determining whether additional measures must be taken to meet the Ordinance requirements for site-specific conditions rests with the applicant.

C. IDEM Stormwater Quality Manual, 2007.

D. The removal rate for this category varies widely between various models and manufacturers. Independent testing must be provided, rather than the manufacturer's testing data. In lieu of Independent testing data, the latest pre-approved proprietary BMPs list from the City of Indianapolis. These BMPs must be configured as offline units. The accepted design flow rate for a Water Quality Device shall be the flow value at which 80% TSS removal rate is equaled or exceeded based on the unit's efficiency curve (flow rate versus removal rate graph).

REFERENCES

1. Bell, W., L. Stokes, L.J. Gavan, T.N. Nguyen. 1995. *Assessment of the Pollutant Removal Efficiencies of Delaware Sand Filter BMPs*. City of Alexandria, Department of Transportation and Environmental Services, Alexandria, VA.
2. City of Austin. 1990. *Removal Efficiencies of Stormwater Control Structures*. Environmental Resources Management Division, Environmental and Conservation Services Department, City of Austin, Austin, TX.
3. City of Austin. 1995 (draft). *Characterization of Stormwater Pollution for the Austin, Texas Area*. Environmental Resources Management Division, Environmental and Conservation Services Department, City of Austin, Austin, TX.
4. Claytor, R.A., and T.R. Schueler. 1996. *Design of Stormwater Filtering Systems*. The Center for Watershed Protection, Silver Spring, MD.
5. Gain, S.W. 1996. *The Effects of Flow-Path Modifications on Urban Water-Quality Constituent Retention in Urban Stormwater Detention Pond and Wetland System, Orlando, Florida*. Florida Department of Transportation, Orlando, FL.
6. Harper, H.H., and J.L. Herr. 1993. *Treatment Efficiencies of Detention with Filtration Systems*. Environmental Research and Design, Inc., Orlando, FL.
7. Horner, R.R., and C.R. Horner. 1995. *Design, Construction, and Evaluation of a Sand Filter Stormwater Treatment System, Part II, Performance Monitoring*. Report to Alaska Marine Lines, Seattle, WA.
8. Khan, Z., C. Thrush, P. Cohen, L. Kulzer, R. Franklin, D. Field, J. Koon, and R. Horner. 1992. *Biofiltration Swale Performance, Recommendations, and Design Considerations*. Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle, Water Pollution Control Department, Seattle, WA.
9. Martin, E.H., and J.L. Smoot. 1986. *Constituent-Load Changes in Urban Stormwater Runoff Routed Through aDetention Pond - Wetlands Systems in Central Florida*. U.S. Geological Survey Water Resources Investigations Report 85-4310. Tallahassee, FL.
10. Prince George's County. 1993. *Design Manual for Use of Bioretention in Stormwater Management*. Department of Environmental Resources, Prince George's County, Landover, MD.
11. USEPA. 1993. *Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters*. EPA-840-B-92-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), Office of Water, Washington, DC.

12. Welborn, C., and J. Veenhuis. 1987. *Effects of Runoff Control on the Quality and Quantity of Urban Runoff in Two Locations in Austin, TX*. USGS Water Resources Investigations Report 87-4004.
13. Young, G.K., S. Stein, P. Cole, T. Kammer, F. Graziano, and F. Bank. 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*. FHWA-PD-96-032, Federal Highway Administration.
14. Yousef, Y.A., M.P. Wanielista, and H.H. Harper. 1985. Removal of Highway Contaminants by Roadside Swales. *Transportation Research Record* 1017:62-68.
15. Yu, S.L., and D.E. Benelmouffok. 1988. Field Testing of Selected Urban BMPs in Critical Water Issues and Computer Applications. In *Proceedings of the 15th Annual Water Resources Conference*. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.
16. Yu, S.L., S.L. Barnes, and V.W. Gerde. 1993. *Testing of Best Management Practices for Controlling HighwayRunoff*. Virginia Department of Transportation, Report No. FHWA/VA-93-R16, Richmond, VA.
17. Yu, S.L., and R.J. Kaighn. 1992. *VDOT Manual of Practice for Planning Stormwater Management*. Federal Highway Administration, FHWA/VA-92-R13, Virginia Department of Transportation, Virginia Transportation Research Council, Charlottesville, VA.
18. Yu, S.L., and R.J. Kaighn. 1995. *The Control of Pollution in Highway Runoff Through Biofiltration. Volume II: Testing of Roadside Vegetation*. Virginia Department of Transportation, Report No. FHWA/VA-95-R29, Richmond, VA.
19. Yu, S.L., R.J. Kaighn, and S.L. Liao. 1994. *Testing of Best Management Practices for Controlling Highway Runoff, Phase II*. Virginia Department of Transportation, Report No. FHWA/VA-94-R21, Richmond, VA.

CHAPTER TEN
METHODOLOGY FOR DETERMINATION OF REQUIRED SIZING OF BMPs

A. INTRODUCTION

Structural Water Quality BMPs are divided into two major classifications: detention BMPs and Flow-through BMPs. Detention BMPs impound (pond) the runoff to be treated, while flow through BMPs treat the runoff through some form of filtration process.

B. DETENTION BMP SIZING

Water Quality Detention BMPs must be designed to store the water quality volume for treatment. The water quality volume, WQv, is the storage needed to capture and treat the runoff from the first one inch of rainfall. The water quality volume is equivalent to one inch of rainfall multiplied by the volumetric runoff coefficient (Rv) multiplied by the site area, or:

$$\mathbf{WQv = \frac{(P)\,(Rv)\,(A)}{12}}$$

where:
WQv = water quality volume (acre-feet)
P = 1 inch of rainfall
Rv = volumetric runoff coefficient
A = area in acres

The volumetric runoff coefficient is a measure of imperviousness for the contributing area, and is calculated as:

$$\mathbf{Rv = 0.05 + 0.009(I)}$$

Where:
I is the percent impervious cover

For example, a proposed commercial site will be designed to drain to three different outlets, with the following drainage areas and impervious percentages:

Table 10.1

Subarea ID	On-site Contributing Area (acres)	Impervious Area %	Off-Site Contributing Area (acres)
A	7.5	80	0.0
B	4.3	75	0.0
C	6.0	77	0.0

Calculating the volumetric runoff coefficient for subareas A, B and C yields:

Rv (subarea A) = 0.05+0.009(80)=0.77
Rv (subarea B) = 0.05+0.009(75)=0.73
Rv (subarea C) = 0.05+0.009(77)=0.74

The water quality volumes for these three areas are then calculated as:

WQv (subarea A) = (1")(Rv)(A)/12=0.77(7.5)/12=0.48 acre-feet
WQv (subarea B) = 0.73(4.3)/12=0.26 acre-feet
WQv (subarea C) = 0.74(6.0)/12=0.37 acre-feet

Note that this example assumed no offsite sources of discharge through the water quality detention BMPs. If there were significant sources of off-site runoff (sometimes called runon for upstream areas draining to the site), the designer would have the option of diverting off-site runoff around the on-site systems, or the detention BMP should be sized to treat the water quality volume for the entire contributing area, including off-site sources.

C. FLOW THROUGH BMP SIZING

Flow through BMPs are designed to treat runoff at a peak design flow rate through the system. Examples of flow through BMPs include catch basin inserts, sand filters, and grassed channels. Another flow through BMP which is gaining popularity is a dynamic separator. Dynamic separators are proprietary, and usually include an oil-water separation component.

The following procedure should be used to estimate peak discharges for flow through BMPs (adopted from Maryland, 2000). It relies on the volume of runoff computed using the Small Storm Hydrology Method (Pitt, 1994) and utilizes the NRCS, TR-55 Method.

Using the WQv methodology, a corresponding Curve Number (CNwq) is computed utilizing the following equation:

$$CNwq = \frac{1000}{\left[10 + 5P + 10Qa - 10\sqrt{Qa^2 + 1.25QaP}\right]}$$

where:
CNwq = curve number for water quality storm event
P = 1" (rainfall for water quality storm event)
Qa = runoff volume, in inches = 1"×Rv = Rv (inches)
Rv=volumetric runoff coefficient (see previous section)

Due to the complexity of the above equation, the water quality curve number is represented as a function of percent imperviousness in **Figure 10-1**.

The water quality curve number, CNwq, is then used in conjunction with the standard calculated time-of-concentration, tc, and drainage area as the basis input for TR-55 calculations. Using the appropriate Huff rainfall distribution for 1 inch of rainfall, the water quality treatment rate, Qwq, can then be calculated.

REFERENCES

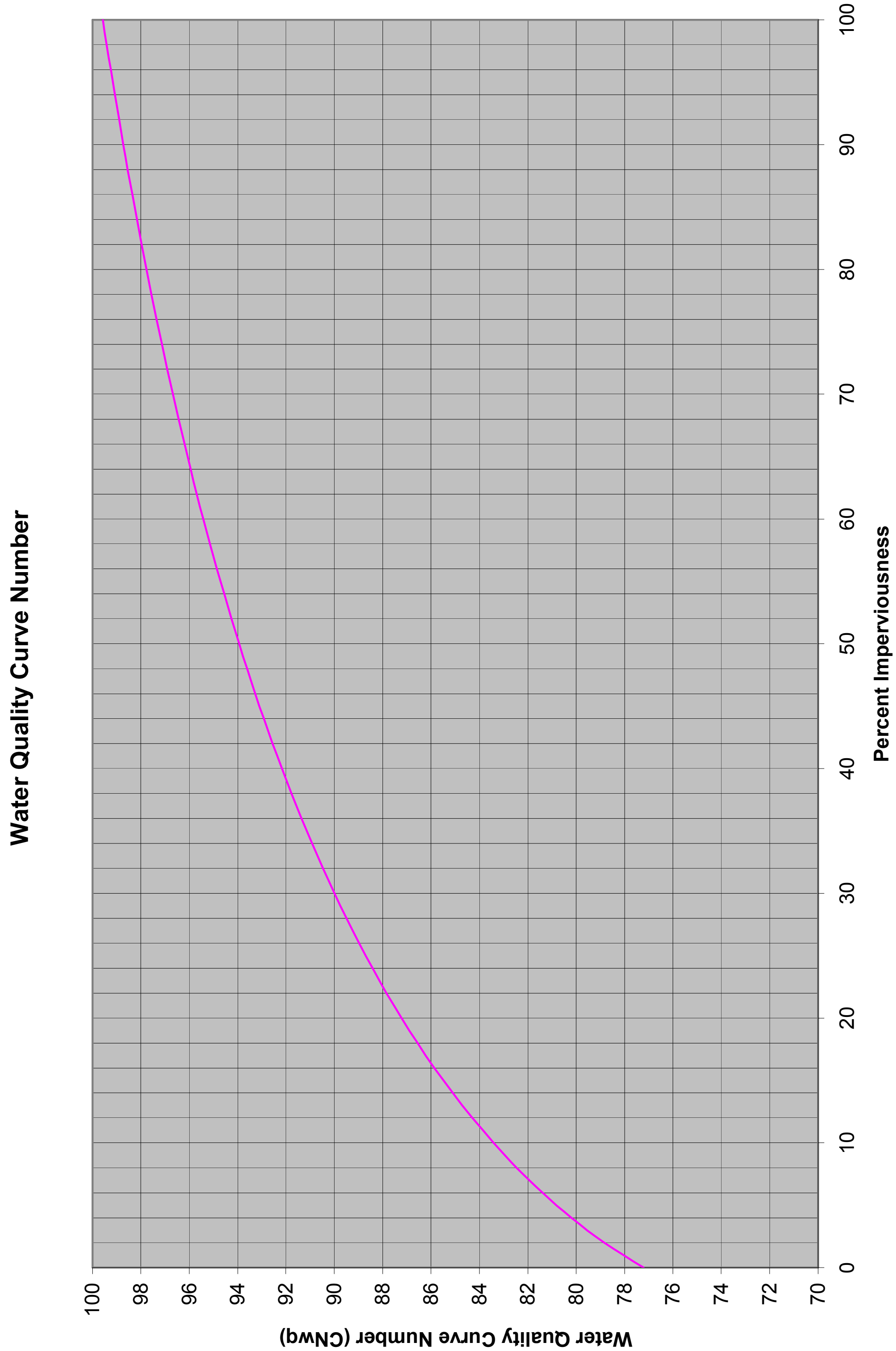
1. Maryland Stormwater Design Manual, Volume II, Appendix D.10, 2000

2. Pitt, R., 1994, Small Storm Hydrology. University of Alabama - Birmingham. Unpublished manuscript. Presented at design of stormwater quality management practices. Madison, WI, May 17-19 1994.

3. Schueler, T.R. and R.A. Claytor, 1996, Design of Stormwater Filter Systems. Center for Watershed Protection, Silver Spring, MD.

4. United States Department of Agriculture (USDA), 1986. Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds. Soil Conservation Service, Engineering Division. Technical Release 55 (TR-55).

Figure 10-1
Curve Number Calculation for Water Quality Storm Event



APPENDIX A

ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

ABBREVIATIONS

BFE	Base Flood Elevation
BMP	Best Management Practice
CFS	Cubic Feet Per Second
CLOMR	Conditional Letter of Map Revision (from FEMA)
CLOMR-F	Conditional Letter of Map Revision Based on Fill (from FEMA)
CN	Curve Number
COE	United States Army Corps of Engineers
CSMP	Comprehensive Stormwater Management Program
CSO	Combined Sewer Overflow
CWA	Clean Water Act
ERM	Elevation Reference Mark
E&SC	Erosion and Sediment Control
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
ETJ	Extraterritorial Jurisdiction
FBFM	Flood Boundary and Floodway Map
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FHBM	Flood Hazard Boundary Map
FIRM	Flood Insurance Rate Map
FIS	Flood Insurance Study
FPG	Flood Protection Grade

FPS	Feet Per Second
GIS	Geographical Information System
GPS	Global Positioning System
HGL	Hydraulic Grade Line
HHW	Household Hazardous Waste
HUC	Hydrologic Unit Code
IDEM	Indiana Department of Environmental Management
IDNR	Indiana Department of Natural Resources
INDOT	Indiana Department of Transportation.
LAG	Lowest Adjacent Grade
LOMA	Letter of Map Amendment (from FEMA)
LOMR	Letter of Map Revision (from FEMA)
LOMR-F	Letter of Map Revision Based on Fill (from FEMA)
MCM	Minimum Control Measure
MS4	Municipal Separate Storm Sewers
NAVD	North American Vertical Datum of 1988
NFIP	National Flood Insurance Program
NGVD 1929	National Geodetic Vertical Datum of 1929
NRCS	USDA-Natural Resources Conservation Service
NPDES	National Pollution Discharge Elimination System
NPS	Non-point source
POTW	Publicly Owned Treatment Works
SFHA	Special Flood Hazard Area

SWCD	Soil and Water Conservation District
SWPPP	Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan
SWQMP	Stormwater Quality Management Plan
Tc	Time of Concentration
TMDL	Total Maximum Daily Load
USCS	Unified Soil Classification System
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
USFWS	United States Fish and Wildlife Service

DEFINITIONS

Acre-Foot (AF). A measure of water volume equal to the inundation of a flat one-acre area to a dept of one foot (43,560 cubic feet).

Administering authority. The designated unit of government given the authority to issue permits.

Agricultural land disturbing activity. Tillage, planting, cultivation, or harvesting operations for the production of agricultural or nursery vegetative crops. The term also includes pasture renovation and establishment, the construction of agricultural conservation practices, and the installation and maintenance of agricultural drainage tile. For purposes of this rule, the term does not include land disturbing activities for the construction of agricultural related facilities, such as barns, buildings to house livestock, roads associated with infrastructure, agricultural waste lagoons and facilities, lakes and ponds, wetlands; and other infrastructure.

Agricultural land use conservation practices. Use of land for the production of animal or plant life, including forestry, pasturing or yarding of livestock, and planting, growing, cultivating, and harvesting crops for human or livestock consumption. Practices that are constructed on agricultural land for the purposes of controlling soil erosion and sedimentation. These practices include grass waterways, sediment basins, terraces, and grade stabilization structures.

Amortization Period. The length of time used to repay a debt or mortgage or to depreciate an initial cost.

Antecedent Runoff Condition. The index of runoff potential before a storm event. The index, developed by the Soil Conservation Service (SCS), is an attempt to account for the variation of the SCS runoff curve number (CN) from storm to storm.

Backflow Preventer. Device that allows liquids to flow in only one direction in a pipe. Backflow preventers are used on sewer pipes to prevent a reverse flow during flooding situations.

Backwater. The rise in water surface elevation caused by some obstruction such as a narrow bridge opening, buildings or fill material that limits the area through which the water shall flow.

Base Flood Elevation. The water surface elevation corresponding to a flood having a one percent probability of being equaled or exceeded in a given year.

Base Flood. See "Regulatory Flood".

Base Flow. Stream discharge derived from groundwater sources as differentiated from surface runoff. Sometimes considered to include flows from regulated lakes or reservoirs.

Basement. A building story that is all or partly underground but having at least one-half of its height below the average level of the adjoining ground. A basement shall not be counted as a story for the purpose of height regulations.

Benchmark. A marked point of known elevation from which other elevations may be established.

Best Management Practices. Design, construction, and maintenance practices and criteria for stormwater facilities that minimize the impact of stormwater runoff rates and volumes, prevent erosion, and capture pollutants.

Buffer Strip. An existing, variable width strip of vegetated land intended to protect water quality and habitat.

Building. See “structure”.

Capacity of a Storm Drainage Facility. The maximum flow that can be conveyed or stored by a storm drainage facility without causing damage to public or private property.

Catch Basin. A chamber usually built at the curb line of a street for the admission of surface water to a storm drain or subdrain, having at its base a sediment sump designed to retain grit and detritus below the point of overflow.

Centerline of Channel. The thalweg of a channel.

Channel Improvement. Alteration, maintenance, or reconstruction of the channel area for the purpose of improving the channel capacity or overall drainage efficiency. The noted "improvement" does not necessarily imply water quality or habitat improvement within the channel or its adjacent area.

Channel Modification. Alteration of a channel by changing the physical dimensions or materials of its bed or banks. Channel modification includes damming, rip-rapping or other armoring, widening, deepening, straightening, relocating, lining, and significant removal of bottom or woody vegetation. Channel modification does not include the clearing of dead or dying vegetation, debris, or trash from the channel. Channelization is a severe form of channel modification typically involving relocation of the existing channel (e.g., straightening).

Channel Stabilization. Protecting the sides and bed of a channel from erosion by controlling flow velocities and flow directions using jetties, drops, or other structures and/or by fining the channel with vegetation, riprap, concrete, or other suitable lining material.

Channel. A portion of a natural or artificial watercourse which periodically or continuously contains moving water, or which forms a connecting link between two bodies of water. It has a defined bed and banks which serve to confine the water.

Class V injection well. A type of well, which typically has a depth greater than its largest surface dimension, emplaces fluids into the subsurface, and does not meet the definitions of Class I through Class IV wells as defined under 40 CFR 146.5. While the term includes the specific examples described in 40 CFR 144.81, septic systems that serve more than one (1) single-family dwelling or provide service for non-domestic waste, dug wells, bored wells, improved sinkholes, french drains, infiltration sumps, and infiltration galleries, it does not include surface impoundments, trenches, or ditches that are wider than they are deep.

Closed Conduit. A pipe, tube, or tile used for transmitting water.

Combined Sewer Overflow. A system designed and used to receive and transport combined sewage so that during dry periods the wastewater is carried to a treatment facility. During storm events, the excess water is discharged directly into a river, stream, or lake without treatment.

Compensatory Storage. An artificial volume of storage within a floodplain used to balance the loss of natural flood storage capacity when artificial fill or substructures are placed within the floodplain.

Compost. Organic residue (or a mixture of organic residue and soil) that has undergone biological decomposition until it has become relatively stable humus.

Comprehensive Stormwater Management Program. A comprehensive stormwater program for effective management of stormwater quantity and quality throughout the community.

Constructed Wetland. A manmade shallow pool that creates growing conditions suitable for wetland vegetation and is designed to maximize pollutant removal.

Construction activity. Land disturbing activities, and land disturbing activities associated with the construction of infrastructure and structures. This term does not include routine ditch or road maintenance or minor landscaping projects.

Construction plan. A representation of a project site and all activities associated with the project. The plan includes the location of the project site, buildings and other infrastructure, grading activities, schedules for implementation and other pertinent information related to the project site. A storm water pollution prevention plan is a part of the construction plan.

Construction site access. A stabilized stone surface at all points of ingress or egress to a project site, for the purpose of capturing and detaining sediment carried by tires of vehicles or other equipment entering or exiting the project site.

Contiguous. Adjoining or in actual contact with.

Contour Line. Line on a map which represents a contour or points of equal elevation.

Contour. An imaginary line on the surface of the earth connecting points of the same elevation.

Contractor or subcontractor. An individual or company hired by the project site or individual lot owner, their agent, or the individual lot operator to perform services on the project site.

Control Structure. A structure designed to control the rate of flow that passes through the structure, given a specific upstream and downstream water surface elevation.

Conveyance. Any structural method for transferring stormwater between at least two points. The term includes piping, ditches, swales, curbs, gutters, catch basins, channels, storm drains, and roadways.

Convolution. The process of translating precipitation excess into a runoff hydrograph.

Crawl Space. Low space below first floor of a house where there has not been excavation deep enough for a basement, usually less than seven (7) feet in depth, but where there is access for pipes, ducts, utilities and similar equipment.

Critical Duration Analysis. The process of testing different rainfall durations to find that "critical duration", which produces the highest peak runoff or the highest storage volume.

Cross-Section. A graph or plot of ground elevation across a stream valley or a portion of it, usually along a line perpendicular to the stream or direction of flow.

Crown of Pipe. The elevation of top of pipe.

Cubic Feet Per Second (CFS). Used to describe the amount of flow passing a given point in a stream channel. One cubic foot per second is equivalent to approximately 7.5 gallons per second.

Culvert. A closed conduit used for the conveyance of surface drainage water under a roadway, railroad, canal or other impediment.

Curve Number (CN). The Soil Conservation Service index that represents the combined hydrologic effect of soil, land use, land cover, hydrologic condition and antecedent runoff condition.

Dam. A barrier to confine or impound water for storage or diversion, to prevent gully erosion, or to retain soil, sediment, or other debris.

Damage. Measurable rise in flood heights on buildings currently subject to flooding, flooding of buildings currently not subject to flooding and increases in volume or velocity to the point where the rate of land lost to erosion and scour is substantially increased.

Datum. Any level surface to which elevations are referred, usually Mean Sea Level.

Dechlorinated swimming pool discharge. Chlorinated water that has either sat idle for seven (7) days following chlorination prior to discharge to the MS4 conveyance, or, by analysis, does not contain detectable concentrations (less than five-hundredths (0.05) milligram per liter) of chlorinated residual.

Depressional Storage Areas. Non-riverine depressions in the earth where stormwater collects. The volumes are often referred to in units of acre-feet.

Design Storm. A selected storm event, described in terms of the probability of occurring once within a given number of years, for which drainage or flood control improvements are designed and built.

Detention Basin. A facility constructed or modified to restrict the flow of storm water to a prescribed maximum rate, and to detain concurrently the excess waters that accumulate behind the outlet.

Detention Facility. A facility designed to detain a specified amount of stormwater runoff assuming a specified release rate. The volumes are often referred to in units of acre-feet.

Detention Storage. The temporary detaining of storage of stormwater in storage facilities, on rooftops, in streets, parking lots, school yards, parks, open spaces or other areas under predetermined and controlled conditions, with the rate of release regulated by appropriately installed devices.

Detention Time. The theoretical time required to displace the contents of a tank or unit at a given rate of discharge (volume divided by rate of discharge).

Detention. Managing stormwater runoff by temporary holding and controlled release.

Detritus. Dead or decaying organic matter; generally contributed to stormwater as fallen leaves and sticks or as dead aquatic organisms.

Developer. Any person financially responsible for construction activity, or an owner of property who sells or leases, or offers for sale or lease, any lots in a subdivision.

Development. Any man-made change to improved or unimproved real estate including but not limited to:

1. Construction, reconstruction, or placement of a building or any addition to a building;
2. Construction of flood control structures such as levees, dikes, dams or channel improvements;
3. Construction or reconstruction of bridges or culverts;
4. Installing a manufactured home on a site, preparing a site for a manufactured home, or installing a recreational vehicle on a site for more than hundred eight (180) days;
5. Installing utilities, erection of walls, construction of roads, or similar projects;
6. Mining, dredging, filling, grading, excavation, or drilling operations;
7. Storage of materials; or
8. Any other activity that might change the direction, height, or velocity of flood or surface waters.

"Development" does not include activities such as the maintenance of existing buildings and facilities such as painting, re-roofing, resurfacing roads, or gardening, plowing and similar agricultural practices that do not involve filling, grading, excavation, or the construction of permanent buildings.

Direct Release. A method of stormwater management where runoff from a part or the entire development is released directly to the receiving stream without providing detention.

Discharge. Usually the rate of water flow. A volume of fluid passing a point per unit time commonly expressed as cubic feet per second, cubic meters per second, gallons per minute, or millions of gallons per day.

Disposal. The discharge, deposit, injection, spilling, leaking, or placing of any solid waste or hazardous waste into or on any land or water so that the solid waste or hazardous waste, or any constituent of the waste, may enter the environment, be emitted into the air, or be discharged into any waters, including

Ditch. A man-made, open drainageway in or into which excess surface water or groundwater drained from land, stormwater runoff, or floodwaters flow either continuously or intermittently.

Drain. A buried slotted or perforated pipe or other conduit (subsurface drain) or a ditch (open drain) for carrying off surplus groundwater or surface water.

Drainage Area. The area draining into a stream at a given point. It may be of different sizes for surface runoff, subsurface flow and base flow, but generally the surface runoff area is considered as the drainage area.

Drainage Classification (soil). As a natural condition of the soil, drainage refers to both the frequency and duration of periods when the soil is free of saturation. Soil drainage conditions are defined as:

- *Well-drained*--Excess water drains away rapidly, and no mottling occurs within 36 in. of the surface.
- *Moderately well drained*--Water is removed from the soil somewhat slowly resulting in small but significant periods of wetness, and mottling occurs between 18 and 36 in.
- *Poorly drained*--Water is removed so slowly that it is wet for a large part of the time, and mottling occurs between 0 and 8 in.
- *Somewhat poorly drained*--Water is removed from the soil slowly enough to keep it wet for significant periods but not all of the time, and mottling occurs between 8 to 18 in.
- *Very poorly drained*--Water is removed so slowly that the water table remains at or near the surface for the greater part of the time; there may also be periods of surface ponding; the soil has a black to gray surface layer with mottles up to the surface.

Drainage. The removal of excess surface water or groundwater from land by means of surface grading, storm sewers, ditches, swales, channels or subsurface drains. Also see Natural drainage.

Drop Manhole. Manhole having a vertical drop pipe connecting the inlet pipe to the outlet pipe. The vertical drop pipe shall be located immediately outside the manhole.

Dry Well. A type of infiltration practice that allows stormwater runoff to flow directly into the ground via a bored or otherwise excavated opening in the ground surface.

Dry-Bottom Detention Basin. A basin designed to be completely dewatered after having provided its planned detention of runoff during a storm event.

Duration. The time period of a rainfall event.

Earth Embankment. A man-made deposit of soil, rock, or other material often used to form an impoundment.

Elevation Certificate. A form published by the Federal Emergency Management Agency that is used to certify the 100-year or base flood elevation and the lowest elevation of usable space to which a building has been constructed.

Elevation Reference Mark (ERM). Elevation benchmark tied to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum of 1929 and identified during the preparation of a Flood Insurance Study prepared for the Federal Emergency Management Agency.

Emergency Spillway. Usually a vegetated earth channel used to safely convey flood discharges around an impoundment structure.

Energy Dissipater. A device to reduce the energy of flowing water.

Environment. The sum total of all the external conditions that may act upon a living organism or community to influence its development or existence.

Erosion and sediment control measure. A practice, or a combination of practices, to control erosion and resulting sedimentation. and/or off-site damages.

Erosion and sediment control system. The use of appropriate erosion and sediment control measures to minimize sedimentation by first reducing or eliminating erosion at the source and then as necessary, trapping sediment to prevent it from being discharged from or within a project site.

Erosion control plan. A written description and site plan of pertinent information concerning erosion control measures designed to meet the requirements of this Ordinance.

Erosion. The wearing away of the land surface by water, wind, ice, gravity, or other geological agents. The following terms are used to describe different types of water erosion:

- *Accelerated erosion*--Erosion much more rapid than normal or geologic erosion, primarily as a result of the activities of man.

- *Channel erosion* --An erosion process whereby the volume and velocity of flow wears away the bed and/or banks of a well-defined channel.

- *Gully erosion* --An erosion process whereby runoff water accumulates in narrow channels and, over relatively short periods, removes the soil to considerable depths, ranging from 1-2 ft. to as much as 75-100 ft.

- *Rill erosion*--An erosion process in which numerous small channels only several inches deep are formed; occurs mainly on recently disturbed and exposed soils (see Rill).

- *Splash erosion*--The spattering of small soil particles caused by the impact of raindrops on wet soils; the loosened and spattered particles may or may not be subsequently removed by surface runoff.

- *Sheet erosion*--The gradual removal of a fairly uniform layer of soil from the land surface by runoff water.

Extraterritorial Jurisdiction (ETJ). Areas located outside the corporate limits of a community over which the community has statutory development authority.

Farm or Field Tile. A pipe installed in an agricultural area to allow subsurface drainage of farmland for the purpose of agricultural production.

FEMA. The Federal Emergency Management Agency.

Filter Strip. Usually a long, relatively narrow area (usually, 20-75 feet wide) of undisturbed or planted vegetation used near disturbed or impervious surfaces to filter stormwater pollutants for the protection of watercourses, reservoirs, or adjacent properties.

Final stabilization. The establishment of permanent vegetative cover or the application of a permanent nonerosive material to areas where all land disturbing activities have been completed and no additional land disturbing activities are planned under the current permit.

Floatable. Any solid waste that will float on the surface of the water.

Flood (or Flood Waters). A general and temporary condition of partial or complete inundation of normally dry land areas from the overflow, the unusual and rapid accumulation, or the runoff of surface waters from any source.

Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM). A map prepared by the Federal Emergency Management Agency the depicts the FEMA designated floodways within a community. This map also includes delineation of the 100-year and 500-year floodplain boundaries and the location of the Flood Insurance Study cross-sections.

Flood Crest. The maximum stage or elevation reached or expected to be reached by the waters of a specific flood at a given time.

Flood Duration. The length of time a stream is above flood stage or overflowing its banks.

Flood Easement. Easement granted to identify areas inundated by the 100-year flood and prohibit or severely restrict development activities.

Flood Elevation. The elevation at all locations delineating the maximum level of high waters for a flood of given return period.

Flood Fighting. Actions taken immediately before or during a flood to protect human life and to reduce flood damages such as evacuation, emergency sandbagging and diking.

Flood Forecasting. The process of predicting the occurrence, magnitude and duration of an imminent flood through meteorological and hydrological observations and analysis.

Flood Frequency. A statistical expression of the average time period between floods equaling or exceeding a given magnitude. For example, a 100-year flood has a magnitude expected to be equaled or exceeded on the average of once every hundred years; such a flood has a one-percent chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year. Often used interchangeably with "recurrence interval".

Flood Hazard Area. Any floodplain, floodway, floodway fringe, or any combination thereof which is subject to inundation by the regulatory flood; or any flood plain as delineated by Zone X on a Flood Hazard Boundary Map.

Flood Hazard Boundary Map (FHBM). A map prepared by the Federal Emergency Management Agency that depicts Special Flood Hazard Areas as a Zone A within a community. There are no study text, base flood elevations, or floodways associated with this map.

Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM). A map prepared by the Federal Emergency Management Agency that depicts Special Flood Hazard Areas within a community. This map also includes the 100-year or Base Flood Elevation at various locations along the watercourses. More recent versions of the FIMR may also show the FEMA designated floodway boundaries and the location of the Flood Insurance Study cross-sections.

Flood Insurance Study (FIS). A study prepared by the Federal Emergency Management agency to assist a community participating in the National Flood Insurance Program in its application of the program regulations. The study consists of a text which contains community background information with respect to flooding, a floodway data table, summary of flood discharges, flood profiles, a Flood Insurance Rate Map, and a Flood Boundary and Floodway Map.

Flood Profile. A graph showing the relationship of water surface elevation to a specific location, the latter generally expressed as distance above the mouth of a stream of water flowing in a channel. It is generally drawn to show surface elevation for the crest or a specific magnitude of flooding, but may be prepared for conditions at any given time or stage.

Flood Protection Grade (FPG). The elevation of the regulatory or 100-year flood plus two (2) feet at any given location in the Special Flood Hazard Area or 100-year floodplain.

Flood Protection Grade. The elevation of the lowest floor of a building, including the basement, which shall be two feet above the elevation of the regulatory flood.

Flood Resistant Construction (Flood Proofing). Additions, changes or adjustments to structures or property that are designed to reduce or eliminate the potential for flood damage.

Flood Storage Areas. Depressions, basins, or other areas that normally stand empty or partially empty, but fill with rainfall runoff during storms to hold the runoff and reduce downstream flow rates. The volumes are often referred to in units or acre-feet.

Floodplain Management. The operation of a program of corrective and preventive measures for reducing flood damage, including but not limited to flood control projects, floodplain land use regulations, flood proofing of buildings, and emergency preparedness plans.

Floodplain Regulations. General term applied to the full range of codes, ordinances and other regulations relating to the use of land and construction within floodplain limits. The term encompasses zoning ordinances, subdivision regulations, building and housing codes, encroachment laws and open area (space) regulations.

Floodplain. The channel proper and the areas adjoining the channel which have been or hereafter may be covered by the regulatory or 100-year flood. Any normally dry land area that is susceptible to being inundated by water from any natural source. The floodplain includes both the floodway and the floodway fringe districts.

Floodway Fringe. That portion of the flood plain lying outside the floodway, which is inundated by the regulatory flood.

Floodway. The channel of a river or stream and those portions of the floodplains adjoining the channel which are reasonably required to efficiently carry and discharge the peak flow of the regulatory flood of any river or stream.

Footing Drain. A drain pipe installed around the exterior of a basement wall foundation to relieve water pressure caused by high groundwater elevation.

Forebay (or Sediment Forebay). A small pond placed in front of a larger retention/detention structure such as a wet pond, dry pond, or wetland to intercept and concentrate a majority of sediment that is coming into the system before it reaches the larger structure.

Freeboard. An increment of height added to the base flood elevation to provide a factor of safety for uncertainties in calculations, unknown local conditions, wave actions and unpredictable effects such as those caused by ice or debris jams. (See Flood Protection Grade).

French Drain. A drainage trench backfilled with a coarse, water-transmitting material; may contain a perforated pipe.

Gabion. An erosion control structure consisting of a wire cage or cages filled with rocks.

Garbage. All putrescible animal solid, vegetable solid, and semisolid wastes resulting from the processing, handling, preparation, cooking, serving, or consumption of food or food materials.

Geographical Information System. A computer system capable of assembling, storing, manipulation, and displaying geographically referenced information. This technology can be used for resource management and development planning.

Geotextile Fabric. A woven or non-woven, water-permeable synthetic material used to trap sediment particles, prevent the clogging of aggregates with fine grained soil particles, or as a separator under road aggregate.

Geotextile Liner. A synthetic, impermeable fabric used to seal impoundments against leaks.

Global Positioning System. A system that provides specially coded satellite signals that is processed by a receiver, which determines position, velocity, and time. The system is funded and controlled by the U.S. Department of Defense.

Grade. (1) The inclination or slope of a channel, canal, conduit, etc., or natural ground surface usually expressed in terms of the percentage the vertical rise (or fall) bears to the corresponding horizontal distance. (2) The finished surface of a canal bed, roadbed, top of embankment, or bottom of excavation; any surface prepared to a design elevation for the support of construction, such as paving or the laying of a conduit. (3) To finish the surface of a canal bed, roadbed, top of embankment, or bottom of excavation, or other land area to a smooth, even condition.

Grading. The cutting and filling of the land surface to a desired slope or elevation.

Grass. A member of the botanical family Graminae, characterized by blade-like leaves that originate as a sheath wrapped around the stem.

Grassed swale. A type of vegetative practice used to filter stormwater runoff via a vegetated, shallow-channel conveyance.

Grassed Waterway. A natural or constructed waterway, usually broad and shallow, covered with erosion-resistant grasses and used to conduct surface water from an area.

Ground Cover (horticulture). Low-growing, spreading plants useful for low-maintenance landscape areas.

Groundwater Recharge. The infiltration of water into the earth. It may increase the total amount of water stored underground or only replenish supplies depleted through pumping or natural discharge.

Groundwater. Accumulation of underground water, natural or artificial. The term does not include

Habitat. The environment in which the life needs of a plant or animal are supplied.

Hard Surface. See "Impervious Surface."

High Water. Maximum designed permitted, or regulated water level for an impoundment.

Household Hazardous Waste. Solid waste generated by households that is ignitable, toxic, reactive, corrosive, or otherwise poses a threat to human health or the environment.

Hydraulic Grade Line (HGL). For Channel flow, the HGL is equal to the water surface whereas for pressure flow it is the piezometric surface.

Hydraulics. A branch of science that deals with the practical application of the mechanics of water movement. A typical hydraulic study is undertaken to calculate water surface elevations.

Hydrodynamic Loads. Forces imposed on structures by floodwaters due to the impact of moving water on the upstream side of the structure, drag along its sides, and eddies or negative pressures on its downstream side.

Hydrograph. For a given point on a stream, drainage basin, or a lake, a graph showing either the discharge, stage (depth), velocity, or volume of water with respect to time.

Hydrologic Unit Code. A numeric United States Geologic Survey code that corresponds to a watershed area. Each area also has a text description associated with the numeric code.

Hydrology. The science of the behavior of water in the atmosphere, on the surface of the earth, and underground. A typical hydrologic study is undertaken to compute flow rates associated with specified flood events.

Hydrometeorologic. Water-related meteorological data such as rainfall or runoff.

Hydrostatic Loads. Those loads or pressures resulting from the static mass of water at any point of floodwater contact with a structure. They are equal in all direction and always act perpendicular to the surface on which they are applied. Hydrostatic loads can act vertically on structural members such as floors, decks and roofs, and can act laterally on upright structural members such as walls, piers, and foundations.

IDNR. Indiana Department of Natural Resources.

Illicit Discharge. Any discharge to a conveyance that is not composed entirely of stormwater except naturally occurring floatables, such as leaves or tree limbs.

Impact Areas. Areas defined or mapped that are unlikely to be easily drained because of one or more factors including but not limited to any of the following: soil type, topography, land where there is not adequate outlet, a floodway or floodplain, land within 75 feet of each bank of any regulated drain or within 75 feet from the centerline of any regulated tile ditch.

Impaired Waters. Waters that do not or are not expected to meet applicable water quality standards, as included on IDEM's CWA Section 303(d) List of Impaired Waters.

Impervious surface. Surfaces, such as pavement and rooftops, which prevent the infiltration of stormwater into the soil.

Individual building lot. A single parcel of land within a multi-parcel development.

Individual lot operator. A contractor or subcontractor working on an individual lot.

Individual lot owner. A person who has financial control of construction activities for an individual lot.

INDOT. Indiana Department of Transportation. Generally used here to refer to specifications contained in the publication "INDOT Standard Specifications."

Infiltration practices. Any structural BMP designed to facilitate the percolation of run-off through the soil to ground water. Examples include infiltration basins or trenches, dry wells, and porous pavement.

Infiltration. Passage or movement of water into the soil.

Infiltration Swales. A depressed earthen area that is designed to promote infiltration.

Inlet. An opening into a storm drain system for the entrance of surface storm water runoff, more completely described as a storm drain inlet.

Intermittent Stream.

Invert. The inside bottom of a culvert or other conduit.

Junction Chamber. A converging section of conduit, usually large enough for a person to enter, used to facilitate the flow from one or more conduits into a main conduit.

Land Surveyor. A person licensed under the laws of the State of Indiana to practice land surveying.

Land-disturbing Activity. Any man-made change of the land surface, including removing vegetative cover that exposes the underlying soil, excavating, filling, transporting and grading.

Larger common plan of development or sale. A plan, undertaken by a single project site owner or a group of project site owners acting in concert, to offer lots for sale or lease; where such land is contiguous, or is known, designated, purchased or advertised as a common unit or by a common name, such land shall be presumed as being offered for sale or lease as part of a larger common plan. The term also includes phased or other construction activity by a single entity for its own use.

Lateral Storm Sewer. A drain that has inlets connected to it but has no other storm drain connected.

Life Cycle Cost. Cost based on the total cost incurred over the system life including research, development, testing, production, construction, operation, and maintenance. Costs are normally determined on present worth or equivalent annual cost basis.

Low Entry Elevation. The elevation in a structure where overbank flooding can enter the structure.

Lowest Adjacent Grade. The elevation of the lowest grade adjacent (abutting) to a structure, where the soil meets the foundation around the outside of the structure (including structural members such as basement walkout, patios, decks, porches, support posts or piers, and rim of the window well.

Lowest Floor. Refers to the lowest of the following:

1. The top of the basement floor;
2. The top of the garage floor, if the garage is the lowest level of the building;
3. The top of the first floor of buildings constructed on a slab or of buildings elevated on pilings or constructed on a crawl space with permanent openings; or
4. The top of the floor level of any enclosure below an elevated building where the walls of the enclosure provide any resistance to the flow of flood waters unless:

   a] The walls are designed to automatically equalize the hydrostatic flood forces on the walls by allowing for the entry and exit of flood waters, by providing a minimum of two opening (in addition to doorways and windows) having a total area of one (1) square foot for every two (2) square feet of enclosed area subject to flooding. The bottom of all such openings shall be no higher than one (1) foot above grade.

   b] Such enclosed space shall be usable only for the parking of vehicles or building access.

Major Drainage System. Drainage system carrying runoff from an area of one or more square miles.

Manhole. Storm drain structure through which a person may enter to gain access to an underground storm drain or enclosed structure.

Manning Roughness Coefficient or Manning's "n" Value. A dimensionless coefficient ("n") used in the Manning's equation to account for channel wall frictional losses in steady uniform flow.

Measurable storm event. A precipitation event that results in a total measured precipitation accumulation equal to, or greater than, one-half (0.5) inch of rainfall.

Minimum Control Measure. Minimum measures required by the NPDES Phase II program. The six (6) MCMs are: Public education and outreach, Public participation and involvement, Illicit discharge detection and elimination, Construction site runoff control, Post-construction runoff control, and Pollution prevention and good housekeeping.

Minor Drainage Systems. Drainage system carrying runoff from an area of less than one square mile.

Minor Subdivision. See Subdivision, Minor.

Mulch. A natural or artificial layer of plant residue or other materials covering the land surface which conserves moisture, holds soil in place, aids in establishing plant cover, and minimizes temperature fluctuations.

Multi-Family. Any structure which contains three or more dwelling units. A dwelling unit is any structure, or part of a structure, which is constructed to a house a family.

Municipal Separate Storm Sewers. An MS4 meets all the following criteria: (1) is a conveyance or system of conveyances owned by the state, county, city, town, or other public entity; (2) discharges to waters of the U.S.; (3) is designed or used for collecting or conveying stormwater; (4) is not a combined sewer; and, (5) is not part of a Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW).

Municipal, state, federal, or institutional refueling area. An operating gasoline or diesel fueling area whose primary function is to provide fuel to either municipal, state, federal, or institutional equipment or vehicles.

Mutual Drain. A drain that: (1) Is located on two or more tracts of land that are under different ownership; (2) was established by the mutual consent of all the owners; and (3) was not established under or made subject to any drainage statute.

National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP). The NFIP is a Federal program enabling property owners to purchase flood insurance. The Federal Emergency Management Agency administers the NFIP in communities throughout the Unites States. The NFIP is based on an agreement between local communities and the Federal government which states that if a community will implement floodplain management measures to reduce future flood risks to new construction and substantially improved structures in flood hazard areas, the Federal government will make flood insurance available within the community as a financial protection against flood losses that do occur.

National Geodetic Vertical Datum of 1929. The nationwide, Federal Elevation datum used to reference topographic elevations to a known value.

National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES). A permit developed by the U.S. EPA through the Clean Water Act. In Indiana, the permitting process has been delegated to IDEM. This permit covers aspects of municipal stormwater quality.

Natural Drainage. The flow patterns of stormwater run-off over the land by gravity. The post-developed natural drainage may be changed by development as compared to the pre-developed natural drainage..

Nonagricultural land use. Commercial use of land for the manufacturing and wholesale or retail sale of goods or services, residential or institutional use of land intended primarily to shelter people, highway use of land including lanes, alleys, and streets, and other land uses not included in agricultural land use.

Nonpoint Source Pollution. Pollution that enters a water body from diffuse origins on the watershed and does not result from discernable, confined, or discrete conveyances.

Normal Depth. Depth of flow in an open conduit during uniform flow for the given conditions.

North American Vertical Datum of 1988 (NAVD 1988). The nationwide, Federal Elevation datum used to reference topographic elevations to a known value.

Nutrient(s). (1) A substance necessary for the growth and reproduction of organisms. (2) In water, those substances (chiefly nitrates and phosphates) that promote growth of algae and bacteria.

Off-site. Everything not located at or within a particular site.

Off-site Land Areas. Those areas that by virtue of existing topography naturally shed surface water onto or through the developing property.

100-Year Frequency Flood. See “regulatory flood”.

On-Site. Located within the controlled or urbanized area where runoff originates.

Open Drain. A natural watercourse or constructed open channel that conveys drainage water.

Open Space. Any land area devoid of any disturbed or impervious surfaces created by industrial, commercial, residential, agricultural, or other manmade activities.

Orifice. A device which controls the rate of flow from a detention basin.

Outfall scouring. The deterioration of a streambed or lakebed from an outfall discharge to an extent that the excessive settling of solid material results and suitable aquatic habitat is diminished.

Outfall. The point, location, or structure where a pipe or open drain discharges to a receiving body of water.

Outlet. The point of water disposal from a stream, river, lake, tidewater, or artificial drain.

Overland Flow. Consists of sheet flow, shallow concentrated flow and channel flow.

Peak Discharge (or Peak Flow). The maximum instantaneous flow from a given storm condition at a specific location.

Percolation. The movement of water through soil.

Perennial Stream. A stream that maintains water in its channel throughout the year.

Permanent stabilization. The establishment, at a uniform density of seventy percent (70%) across the disturbed area, of vegetative cover or permanent non-erosive material that will ensure the resistance of the soil to erosion, sliding, or other movement.

Permeability (soil). The quality of a soil that enables water or air to move through it. Usually expressed in inches per hour or inches per day.

Pervious. Allowing movement of water.

Pesticides. Chemical compounds used for the control of undesirable plants, animals, or insects. The term includes insecticides, herbicides, algicides, rodenticides, nematicides, fungicides, and growth regulators.

pH. A numerical measure of hydrogen ion activity, the neutral point being 7.0. All pH values below 7.0 are acid, and all above 7.0 are alkaline.

Phasing of construction. Sequential development of smaller portions of a large project site, stabilizing each portion before beginning land disturbance on subsequent portions, to minimize exposure of disturbed land to erosion.

Phosphorus (available). Inorganic phosphorus that is readily available for plant growth.

Piping. The formation of "pipes" by underground erosion. Water in the soil carries the fine soil particles away, and a series of eroded tubes or tunnels develop. These openings will grow progressively larger and can cause a dam failure.

Planimetric Data. Horizontal measurements involving distances or dimensions on a diagram, map, Plat of Survey or topographic map. Normally in units of feet.

Plat of Survey. A scaled diagram showing boundaries of a tract of land or subdivision. This may constitute a legal description of the land and be used in lieu of a written description.

Point Source. Any discernible, confined, and discrete conveyance including but not limited to any pipe, ditch, channel, tunnel, conduit, well, discrete fissure, or container from which pollutants are or maybe discharged (P.L. 92-500, Section 502[14]).

Pollutant of concern. Any pollutant that has been documented via analytical data as a cause of impairment in any waterbody.

Porosity. The volume of pore space in soil or rock.

Porous pavement. A type of infiltration practice to improve the quality and reduce the quantity of storm water run-off via the use of manmade, pervious pavement which allows run-off to percolate through the pavement and into underlying soils

Private Drain. A drain that: (1) Is located on land owned by one person or by two or more persons jointly; and (2) was not established under or made subject to any drainage statute.

Professional Engineer. A person licensed under the laws of the State of Indiana to practice professional engineering.

Programmatic Indicator. Any data collected by an MS4 entity that is used to indicate implementation of one (1) or more minimum control measures.

Project site owner. The person required to submit a stormwater permit application, and required to comply with the terms of this ordinance, including a developer or a person who has financial and operational control of construction activities, and project plans and specifications, including the ability to make modifications to those plans and specifications.

Project site. The entire area on which construction activity is to be performed.

Probable Maximum Flood. The most severe flood that may be expected from a combination of the most critical meteorological and hydrological conditions that are reasonably possible in the drainage basin. It is used in designing high-risk flood protection works and siting of structures and facilities that shall be subject to almost no risk of flooding. The probable maximum flood is usually much larger that the 100-year flood.

Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW). A municipal operation that breaks down and removes contaminants in the wastewater prior to discharging to a stream through primary and/or secondary treatment systems.

Qualified professional. An individual who is trained and experienced in storm water treatment techniques and related fields as may be demonstrated by state registration, professional certification, experience, or completion of coursework that enable the individual to make sound, professional judgments regarding storm water control or treatment and monitoring, pollutant fate and transport, and drainage planning.

Radius of Curvature. Length of radius of a circle used to define a curve.

Rain garden. A vegetative practice used to alter impervious surfaces, such as roofs, into pervious surfaces for absorption and treatment of rainfall.

Rainfall Intensity. The rate at which rain is falling at any given instant, usually expressed in inches per hour.

Reach. Any length of river, channel or storm drain.

Receiving Stream or Receiving Water. The body of water into which runoff or effluent is discharged. The term does not include private drains, unnamed conveyances, retention and detention basins, or constructed wetlands used as treatment.

Recharge. Replenishment of groundwater reservoirs by infiltration and transmission from the outcrop of an aquifer or from permeable soils.

Recurrence Interval. A statistical expression of the average time between floods equaling or exceeding a given magnitude.

Redevelopment. Alterations of a property that change a site or building in such a way that there is disturbances of one (1) acre or more of land. The term does not include such activities as exterior remodeling.

Regulated Area. The following areas within Lake County:

1. All territory of the County except for a territory of a municipality located within the County unless the municipality has entered into an agreement to adopt the Lake County Stormwater Management Ordinance.

2. All areas, within a municipality, that directly drain to a Regulated Drain.

Regulated Drain. A drain subject to the provisions of the Indiana Drainage Code, I.C.-36-9-27.

Regulatory or 100-Year Flood. The discharge or elevation associated with the 100-year flood as calculated by a method and procedure which is acceptable to and approved by the Indiana Department of Natural Resources and the Federal Emergency Management Agency. The "regulatory flood" is also known as the "base flood".

Regulatory Floodway. See Floodway.

Release Rate - The amount of storm water release from a storm water control facility per unit of time.

Reservoir. A natural or artificially created pond, lake or other space used for storage, regulation or control of water. May be either permanent or temporary. The term is also used in the hydrologic modeling of storage facilities.

Retail gasoline outlet. An operating gasoline or diesel fueling facility whose primary function is the resale of fuels. The term applies to facilities that create five thousand (5,000) or more square feet of impervious surfaces, or generate an average daily traffic count of one hundred (100) vehicles per one thousand (1,000) square feet of land area.

Retention basin. A type of storage practice, that has no positive outlet, used to retain storm water run-off for an indefinite amount of time. Runoff from this type of basin is removed only by infiltration through a porous bottom or by evaporation.

Retention. The storage of stormwater to prevent it from leaving the development site. May be temporary or permanent.

Retention Facility. A facility designed to completely retain a specified amount of stormwater runoff without release except by means of evaporation, infiltration or pumping. The volumes are often referred to in units of acre-feet.

Return Period - The average interval of time within which a given rainfall event will be equaled or exceeded once. A flood having a return period of 100 years has a one percent probability of being equaled or exceeded in any one year.

Revetment. Facing of stone or other material, either permanent or temporary, placed along the edge of a stream to stabilize the bank and protect it from the erosive action of the stream. Also see Revetment riprap.

Right-of-Way for a County Drain. The statutory right of way as defined by Indiana Code for a regulated drain.

Riparian habitat. A land area adjacent to a waterbody that supports animal and plant life associated with that waterbody.

Riparian zone. Of, on, or pertaining to the banks of a stream, river, or pond.

Riprap. Broken rock, cobble, or boulders placed on earth surfaces, such as the face of a dam or the bank of a stream, for protection against the action of water (waves). Revetment riprap is material graded such that: (1) no individual piece weighs more than 120 lbs. and (2) 90-100% will pass through a 12-inch sieve, 20-60% through a 6-inch sieve, and not more than 10% through a 12-inch sieve.

River Restoration. Restoring the channel of a stream or ditch to its perceived original, non-obstructed capacity by means of clearing & snagging, obstruction removal, and inexpensive streambank protection measures. The term "restoration", as noted, does not necessarily imply restoration or improvement of water quality or habitat within the channel or its adjacent area.

Riverine. Relating to, formed by, or resembling a stream (including creeks and rivers).

Runoff Coefficient - A decimal fraction relating the amount of rain which appears as runoff and reaches the storm drain system to the total amount of rain falling. A coefficient of 0.5 implies that 50 percent of the rain falling on a given surface appears as storm water runoff.

Runoff. That portion of precipitation that flows from a drainage area on the land surface, in open channels, or in stormwater conveyance systems.

Sand. (1) Soil particles between 0.05 and 2.0 mm in diameter. (2) A soil textural class inclusive of all soils that are at least 70% sand and 15% or less clay.

Sanitary Backup. The condition where a sanitary sewer reaches capacity and surcharges into the lowest area.

Scour. The clearing and digging action of flowing water.

Sediment. Solid material (both mineral and organic) that is in suspension, is being transported, or has been moved from its site of origin by air, water, gravity, or ice and has come to rest on the earth's surface.

Sediment Forebay. See "Forebay".

Sedimentation. The process that deposits soils, debris and other unconsolidated materials either on the ground surfaces or in bodies of water or watercourses.

Seepage. The passage of water or other fluid through a porous medium, such as the passage of water through an earth embankment or masonry wall.

Sensitive Water. A water body in need of priority protection or remediation base on its:

- providing habitat for threatened or endangered species,
- usage as a public water supply intake,
- relevant community value,
- usage for full body contact recreation,
- exceptional use classification as found in 327 IAC 2-1-11(b), outstanding state resource water classification as found in 327 IAC 2-1-2(3) and 327 IAC 2-1.5-19(b).

Settling Basin. An enlargement in the channel of a stream to permit the settling of debris carried in suspension.

Silt Fence. A fence constructed of wood or steel supports and either natural (e.g. burlap) or synthetic fabric stretched across area of non-concentrated flow during site development to trap and retain on-site sediment due to rainfall runoff.

Silt. (1) Soil fraction consisting of particles between 0.002 and 0.05 mm in diameter. (2) A soil textural class indicating more than 80% silt.

Siphon - A closed conduit or portion of which lies above the hydraulic grade line, resulting in a pressure less than atmospheric and requiring a vacuum within the conduit to start flow. A siphon utilizes atmospheric pressure to effect or increase the flow of water through a conduit. An inverted siphon is used to carry storm water flow under an obstruction such as a sanitary sewer.

Site. The entire area included in the legal description of the land on which land disturbing activity is to be performed.

Slope. Degree of deviation of a surface from the horizontal, measured as a numerical ratio or percent. Expressed as a ratio, the first number is commonly the horizontal distance (run) and the second is the vertical distance (rise)--e.g., 2:1. However, the preferred method for designation of slopes is to clearly identify the horizontal (H) and vertical (V) components (length (L) and Width (W) components for horizontal angles). Also note that according to international standards (Metric), the slopes are presented as the vertical or width component shown on the numerator--e.g., 1V:2H. Slope expressions in this Ordinance follow the common presentation of slopes--e.g., 2:1 with the metric presentation shown in parenthesis--e.g., (1V:2H). Slopes can also be expressed in "percents". Slopes given in percents are always expressed as (100*V/H) --e.g., a 2:1 (1V:2H) slope is a 50% slope.

Soil and Water Conservation District. A public organization created under state law as a special-purpose district to develop and carry out a program of soil, water, and related resource conservation, use, and development within its boundaries. A subdivision of state government with a local governing body, established under IC 14-32.

Soil. The unconsolidated mineral and organic material on the immediate surface of the earth that serves as a natural medium for the growth of land plants.

Solid Waste. Any garbage, refuse, debris, or other discarded material.

Special Flood Hazard Area. An area that is inundated during the 100-Year flood.

Spill. The unexpected, unintended, abnormal, or unapproved dumping, leakage, drainage, seepage, discharge, or other loss of petroleum, hazardous substances, extremely hazardous substances, or objectionable substances. The term does not include releases to impervious surfaces when the substance does not migrate off the surface or penetrate the surface and enter the soil.

Spillway - A waterway in or about a hydraulic structure, for the escape of excess water.

Standard Project Flood. A term used by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers to designate a flood that may be expected from the most severe combination of meteorological and hydrological conditions that are considered reasonable characteristics of the geographical area in which the drainage basin is located, excluding extremely rare combinations. The peak flow for a standard project flood is generally 40 – 60 percent of the probable maximum flood for the same location.

Stilling Basin - A basin used to slow water down or dissipate its energy.

Storage practices. Any structural BMP intended to store or detain stormwater and slowly release it to receiving waters or drainage systems. The term includes detention and retention basins.

Storm drain signing. Any marking procedure that identifies a storm sewer inlet as draining directly to a receiving waterbody so as to avoid dumping pollutants. The procedures can include painted or cast messages and adhesive decals.

Storm Duration. The length of time that water may be stored in any stormwater control facility, computed from the time water first begins to be stored.

Storm Event. An estimate of the expected amount of precipitation within a given period of time. For example, a 10-yr. frequency, 24-hr. duration storm event is a storm that has a 10% probability of occurring in any one year. Precipitation is measured over a 24-hr. period.

Storm Frequency. The time interval between major storms of predetermined intensity and volumes of runoff--e.g., a 5-yr., 10-yr. or 20-yr. storm.

Storm Sewer. A closed conduit for conveying collected storm water, while excluding sewage and industrial wastes. Also called a storm drain.

Stormwater Drainage System - All means, natural or man-made, used for conducting storm water to, through or from a drainage area to any of the following: conduits and appurtenant features, canals, channels, ditches, storage facilities, swales, streams, culverts, streets and pumping stations.

Stormwater Facility. All ditches, channels, conduits, levees, ponds, natural and manmade impoundments, wetlands, tiles, swales, sewers and other natural or artificial means of draining surface and subsurface water from land.

Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan. A plan developed to minimize the impact of storm water pollutants resulting from construction activities.

Stormwater Quality Management Plan. A comprehensive written document that addresses stormwater runoff quality.

Stormwater Quality Measure. A practice, or a combination of practices, to control or minimize pollutants associated with storm water runoff.

Stormwater runoff. The water derived from rains falling within a tributary basin, flowing over the surface of the ground or collected in channels or conduits.

Stormwater. Water resulting from rain, melting or melted snow, hail, or sleet.

Stream Gauging. The quantitative determination of streamflow using gauges, current meters, weirs, or other measuring instruments at selected locations (see Gauging station').

Stream Length. The length of a stream or ditch, expressed in miles, from the confluence of the stream or ditch with the receiving stream to the upstream extremity of the stream or ditch, as indicated by the solid or dashed, blue or purple line depicting the stream or ditch on the most current edition of the seven and one-half (72) minute topographic quadrangle map published by the United States Geological Survey, measured along the meanders of the stream or ditch as depicted on the map.

Stream. See Intermittent stream, Perennial stream, Receiving stream.

Streambanks. The usual boundaries (not the flood boundaries) of a stream channel. Right and left banks are named facing downstream.

Strip development. A multi-lot project where building lots front on an existing road.

Structure. Refers to a structure that is principally above ground and is enclosed by walls and a roof. The term includes but is not limited to, a gas or liquid storage tank, a manufactured home or a prefabricated building, and recreational vehicles to be installed on a site for more than 180 days.

Structural Engineer. A person licensed under the laws of the State of Indiana to engage in the designing or supervising of construction, enlargement or alteration of structures or any part thereof.

Structural Floodplain. Management Measures. Those physical or engineering measures employed to modify the way foods behave, (e.g., dams, dikes, levees, channel enlargements and diversions).

Subarea/Subbasin. Portion of a watershed divided into homogenous drainage units which can be modeled for purposes of determining runoff rates. The subareas/subbasins have distinct boundaries, as defined by the topography of the area.

Subdivision. Any land that is divided or proposed to be divided into lots, whether contiguous or subject to zoning requirements, for the purpose of sale or lease as part of a larger common plan of development or sale.

Subdivision, Minor. The subdivision of a parent parcel into any combination of not more than three (3) contiguous or non-contiguous new residential, commercial, or industrial building sites. The parcel shall front upon an existing street which is an improved right-of-way maintained by eh County or other governmental entity and not involve any new street.

Subsoil. The B horizons of soils with distinct profiles. In soils with weak profile development, the subsoil can be defined as the soil below which roots do not normally grow.

Subsurface Drain. A pervious backfield trench, usually containing stone and perforated pipe, for intercepting groundwater or seepage.

Subwatershed. A watershed subdivision of unspecified size that forms a convenient natural unit. See also Subarea.

Sump Failure. A failure of the sump pump that results in inundation of crawl space or basement.

Sump Pump. A pump that discharges seepage from foundation footing drains.

Surcharge. Backup of water in a sanitary or storm sewer system in excess of the design capacity of the system.

Surface Runoff. Precipitation that flows onto the surfaces of roofs, streets, the ground, etc., and is not absorbed or retained by that surface but collects and runs off.

Suspended Solids. Solids either floating or suspended in water.

Swale. An elongated depression in the land surface that is at least seasonally wet, is usually heavily vegetated, and is normally without flowing water. Swales conduct stormwater into primary drainage channels and may provide some groundwater recharge.

Tailwater. The water surface elevation at the downstream side of a hydraulic structure (i.e. culvert, bridge, weir, dam, etc.).

Temporary Stabilization. The covering of soil to ensure its resistance to erosion, sliding, or other movement. The term includes vegetative cover, anchored mulch, or other non-erosive material applied at a uniform density of seventy percent (70%) across the disturbed area.

Thalweg. The deepest point (or centerline) of a channel.

Tile Drain. Pipe made of perforated plastic, burned clay, concrete, or similar material, laid to a designed grade and depth, to collect and carry excess water from the soil.

Tile Drainage. Land drainage by means of a series of tile lines laid at a specified depth, grade, and spacing.

Time of Concentration (tc). The travel time of a particle of water from the most hydraulically remote point in the contributing area to the point under study. This can be considered the sum of an overland flow time and times of travel in street gutters, storm sewers, drainage channels, and all other drainage ways.

Topographic Map. Graphical portrayal of the topographic features of a land area, showing both the horizontal distances between the features and their elevations above a given datum.

Topography. The representation of a portion of the earth's surface showing natural and man-made features of a give locality such as rivers, streams, ditches, lakes, roads, buildings and most importantly, variations in ground elevations for the terrain of the area.

Topsoil. (1) The dark-colored surface layer, or a horizon, of a soil; when present it ranges in depth from a fraction of an inch to 2-3 ft. (2) Equivalent to the plow layer of cultivated soils. (3) Commonly used to refer to the surface layer(s), enriched in organic matter and having textural and structural characteristics favorable for plant growth.

Total Maximum Daily Load. Method used to establish allowable loadings for specified pollutants in a surface water resource to meet established water quality standards.

Toxicity. The characteristic of being poisonous or harmful to plant or animal life. The relative degree or severity of this characteristic.

TP-40 Rainfall. Design storm rainfall depth data for various durations published by the National Weather Service in their Technical Paper 40 dated 1961.

Trained individual. An individual who is trained and experienced in the principles of storm water quality, including erosion and sediment control as may be demonstrated by state registration, professional certification, experience, or completion of coursework that enable the individual to make judgments regarding storm water control or treatment and monitoring.

Transition Section. Reaches of the stream of floodway where water flows from a narrow cross-section to a wide cross-section or vice-versa.

Tributary. Based on the size of the contributing drainage area, a smaller watercourse which flows into a larger watercourse.

Turbidity. (1) Cloudiness of a liquid, caused by suspended solids. (2) A measure of the suspended solids in a liquid.

Underdrain. A small diameter perforated pipe that allows the bottom of a detention basin, channel or swale to drain.

Unified Soil Classification System. A system of classifying soils that is based on their identification according to particle size, gradation, plasticity index, and liquid limit.

Uniform Flow. A state of steady flow when the mean velocity and cross-sectional area remain constant in all sections of a reach.

Unit Hydrograph. A unit hydrograph is the hydrograph that results from one inch of precipitation excess generated uniformly over the watershed at a uniform rate during a specified period of time.

Urban Drain. A drain defined as "Urban Drain" in Indiana Drainage Code.

Urbanization The development, change or improvement of any parcel of land consisting of one or more lots for residential, commercial, industrial, institutional, recreational or public utility purposes.

Vegetative practices. Any nonstructural or structural BMP that, with optimal design and good soil conditions, utilizes various forms of vegetation to enhance pollutant removal, maintain and improve natural site hydrology, promote healthier habitats, and increase aesthetic appeal. Examples include grass swales, filter strips, buffer strips, constructed wetlands, and rain gardens.

Vegetative Stabilization. Protection of erodible or sediment producing areas with: permanent seeding (producing long-term vegetative cover), short-term seeding (producing temporary vegetative cover), or sodding (producing areas covered with a turf of perennial sod-forming grass).

Water Course. Any river, stream, creek, brook, branch, natural or man-made drainage way, or man-made drainage way in or into which stormwater runoff or floodwaters flow either regularly or intermittently. This includes areas of sheet flow that convey runoff from more than one parcel.

Water Quality. A term used to describe the chemical, physical, and biological characteristics of water, usually in respect to its suitability for a particular purpose.

Water Resources. The supply of groundwater and surface water in a given area.

Water Table. (1) The free surface of the groundwater. (2) That surface subject to atmospheric pressure under the ground, generally rising and failing with the season or from other conditions such as water withdrawal.

Waterbody. Any accumulation of water, surface, or underground, natural or artificial.

Watercourse. Any river, stream, creek, brook, branch, natural or man-made drainageway in or into which stormwater runoff or floodwaters flow either continuously or intermittently.

Watershed Area. All land and water within the confines of a drainage divide. See also Watershed.

Watershed. The region drained by or contributing water to a specific point that could be along a stream, lake or other stormwater facilities. Watersheds are often broken down into subareas for the purpose of hydrologic modeling.

Waterway. A naturally existing or manmade open conduit or channel utilized for the conveyance of water.

Weir. A channel-spanning structure for measuring or regulating the flow of water.

Wellhead protection area. Has the meaning set forth at 327 IAC 8-4.1-1(27).

Wet-Bottom Detention Basin (Retention Basin) - A basin designed to retain a permanent pool of water after having provided its planned detention of runoff during a storm event.

Wetlands. Areas that are inundated or saturated by surface water or groundwater at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions.

APPENDIX B

FORMS

Application Checklist**
Notice of Intent -- State Form #47487**
Construction Inspection Log **
Certification of Completion **
Notice of Termination **
Closeout Inspection**
Individual Lot Typical Erosion &Sediment Control **
Post-Construction BMP Inspection Checklists **

** - See *http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org* for the current forms.

Lake County
Application for Stormwater Permit
(to be completed by Applicant)

Project Name:	
General Location:	
File Number:	Date Completed:

1. Application Fee

	Check Attached	

2. Notice of Intent

	Completed Notice of Intent -- State Form #47487	

3. Construction Plans

	Project narrative and supporting documents, including the following information:	
		An index indicating the location, in the construction plans, of all information required by this subsection.
		Description of the nature and purpose of the project.
		A copy of a legal boundary survey for the site, performed in accordance with Rule 12 of Title 865 of the Indiana Administrative Code or any applicable and subsequently adopted rule or regulation for the subdivision limits, including all drainage easements and wetlands.
		Soil properties, characteristics, limitations, and hazards associated with the project site and the measures that will be integrated into the project to overcome or minimize adverse soil conditions.
		General construction sequence of how the project site will be built, including phases of construction.
		14-Digit Watershed Hydrologic Unit Code.
		A reduced plat or project site map showing the lot numbers, lot boundaries, easements, and road layout and names. The reduced map must be legible and submitted on a sheet or sheets no larger than eleven (11) inches by seventeen (17) inches for all phases or sections of the project site.
		A general site plan exhibit with the proposed construction area superimposed on the county/City GIS map at a scale of 1”=100’. The exhibit should provide 2-foot contour information and include all roads and buildings within a minimum 500’ radius beyond the project boundaries. All on-site elevations shall be given in North American Vertical Datum of 1988 (NAVD). The horizontal datum of topographic map shall be based on Indiana State Plane Coordinates, NAD83. The map will contain a notation indicating the noted datum information.
		Identification of any other state or federal water quality permits that are required for construction activities associated with the owner’s project site.
		Proof of Errors and Omissions Insurance for the registered professional engineer or licensed surveyor showing a minimum amount of $1,000,000 in coverage.
	Vicinity map depicting the project site location in relationship to recognizable local	

	landmarks, towns, and major roads, such as a USGS topographic quadrangle map, or county or municipal road map.	
	An existing project site layout that must include the following information:	
		Location, name, and normal water level of all wetlands, lakes, ponds, and water courses on, or adjacent to, the project site.
		Location of all existing structures on the project site.
		One hundred (100) year floodplains, floodway fringes, and floodways. Please note if none exists.
		Soil map of the predominant soil types, as determined by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) Soil Survey, or as determined by a soil scientist. Hydrologic classification for soils should be shown when hydrologic methods requiring soils information are used. A soil legend must be included with the soil map.
		Identification and delineation of vegetative cover such as grass, weeds, brush, and trees on the project site.
		Location of storm, sanitary, combined sewer, and septic tank systems and outfalls.
		Land use of all adjacent properties.
		Identification and delineation of sensitive areas.
		Existing topography at a contour interval appropriate to indicate drainage patterns.
		The location of regulated drains, farm drains, inlets and outfalls, if any of record.
		Location of all existing cornerstones within the proposed development and a plan to protect and preserve them.
	Final project site layout, including the following information:	
		Location of all proposed site improvements, including roads, utilities, lot delineation and identification, proposed structures, and common areas.
		One hundred (100) year floodplains, floodway fringes, and floodways. Please note if none exists.
		Proposed final topography, at a contour interval appropriate to indicate drainage patterns.
	A grading plan, including the following information:	
		Delineation of all proposed land disturbing activities, including off-site activities that will provide services to the project site.
		Location of all soil stockpiles and borrow areas.
		Information regarding any off-site borrow, stockpile, or disposal areas that are associated with a project site, and under the control of the project site owner.
		Existing and proposed topographic information.
	A drainage plan, including the following information:	
		An estimate of the peak discharge, based on the ten (10) year storm event, of the project site for post-construction conditions.
		The proposed 100-year release rates determined for the site, showing the methodology used to calculate them and detailing considerations given to downstream restrictions (if any) that may affect the calculated allowable release rates.

		Calculation showing peak runoff rate after development for the 100-year return period 24-hour storms do not exceed the respective allowable release runoff rates.
		Location, size, and dimensions of all existing streams to be maintained, and new drainage systems such as culverts, bridges, storm sewers, conveyance channels, and 100-year overflow paths/ponding areas shown as hatched areas, along with the associated easements.
		Locations where stormwater may be directly discharged into groundwater, such as abandoned wells or sinkholes. Please note if none exists.
		Locations of specific points where stormwater discharge will leave the project site.
		Name of all receiving waters. If the discharge is to a separate municipal storm sewer, identify the name of the municipal operator and the ultimate receiving water.
		Location, size, and dimensions of features such as permanent retention or detention facilities, including existing or manmade wetlands, used for the purpose of stormwater management. Include existing retention or detention facilities that will be maintained, enlarged, or otherwise altered and new ponds or basins to be built and the basis of their design.
		The estimated depth and amount of storage required by design of the new ponds or basins.
		One or more typical cross sections of all existing and proposed channels or other open drainage facilities carried to a point above the 100-year high water and showing the elevation of the existing land and the proposed changes, together with the high water elevations expected from the 100 year storm under the controlled conditions called for by this ordinance, and the relationship of structures, streets, and other facilities
4. Stormwater Drainage Technical Report		
	A summary report, including the following information:	
		The significant drainage problems associated with the project;
		The analysis procedure used to evaluate these problems and to propose solutions;
		Any assumptions or special conditions associated with the use of these procedures, especially the hydrologic or hydraulic methods;
		The proposed design of the drainage control system; and
		The results of the analysis of the proposed drainage control system showing that it does solve the project's drainage problems. Any hydrologic or hydraulic calculations or modeling results must be adequately cited and described in the summary description. If hydrologic or hydraulic models are used, the input and output files for all necessary runs must be included in the appendices. A map showing any drainage area subdivisions used in the analysis must accompany the report.

	A Hydrologic/Hydraulic Analysis, consistent with the methodologies and calculation included in the [technical standards], and including the following information:

		A hydraulic report detailing existing and proposed drainage patterns on the subject site. The report should include a description of present land use and proposed land use. Any off-site drainage entering the site should be addressed as well. This report should be comprehensive and detail all of the steps the engineer took during the design process.
		All hydrologic and hydraulic computations should be included in the submittal. These calculations should include, but are not limited to: runoff curve numbers and runoff coefficients, runoff calculations, stage-discharge relationships, times-of-concentration and storage volumes.
		Copies of all computer runs. These computer runs should include both the input and the outputs. Electronic copies of the computer runs with input files will expedite the review process and is required to be submitted.
		A set of exhibits should be included showing the drainage sub-areas and a schematic detailing of how the computer models were set up.
		A conclusion which summarizes the hydraulic design and details how this design satisfies this Ordinance.
5. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan for Construction Sites		
	Location, dimensions, detailed specifications, and construction details of all temporary and permanent stormwater quality measures.	
	Temporary stabilization plans and sequence of implementation.	
	Permanent stabilization plans and sequence of implementation.	
	Temporary and permanent stabilization plans shall include the following:	
		Specifications and application rates for soil amendments and seed mixtures.
		The type and application rate for anchored mulch.
	Construction sequence describing the relationship between implementation of stormwater quality measures and stages of construction activities.	
	A typical erosion and sediment control plan for individual lot development.	
	Self-monitoring program including plan and procedures.	
	A description of potential pollutant sources associated with the construction activities, which may reasonably be expected to add a significant amount of pollutants to stormwater discharges.	
	Material handling and storage associated with construction activity shall meet the spill prevention and spill response requirements in 327 IAC 2-6.1.	
	Name, address, telephone number, and list of qualifications of the trained individual in charge of the mandatory stormwater pollution prevention self-monitoring program for the project site.	
6. Post-Construction Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan		
	A description of potential pollutant sources from the proposed land use, which may reasonably be expected to add a significant amount of pollutants to stormwater discharges.	
	Location, dimensions, detailed specifications, and construction details of all post-construction stormwater quality measures.	
	A description of measures that will be installed to control pollutants in stormwater discharges that will occur after construction activities have been completed. Such practices include infiltration of run-off, flow reduction by use of open vegetated	

	swales and natural depressions, buffer strip and riparian zone preservation, filter strip creation, minimization of land disturbance and surface imperviousness, maximization of open space, and stormwater retention and detention ponds.
	A sequence describing when each post-construction stormwater quality measure will be installed.
	Stormwater quality measures that will remove or minimize pollutants from stormwater run-off.
	Stormwater quality measures that will be implemented to prevent or minimize adverse impacts to stream and riparian habitat.
	A narrative description of the maintenance guidelines for all post-construction stormwater quality measures to facilitate their proper long term function. This narrative description shall be made available to future parties who will assume responsibility for the operation and maintenance of the post-construction stormwater quality measures.

Indiana Department of Environmental Management
Notice of Intent (NOI)
Storm Water Runoff Associated with Construction Activity
NPDES General Permit Rule 327 IAC 15-5 **(Rule 5)**

Insert Local MS4 logo here

Submission of this Notice of Intent letter constitutes notice that the project site owner is applying for coverage under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) General Permit Rule for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity. Permitted project site owners are required to comply with all terms and conditions of the General Permit Rule 327 IAC 15-5 (Rule 5).

Check the type of Submittal: ☐ **Initial** ☐ **Amendment** ☐ **Renewal** ☐ **Extension**

Project Name and Location:

Project Permit #______________ Project Name:________________________________ County:_____________
Brief Description of Project Location: ____
Latitude ______________________________ **and** Quarter _____________ Section ____________
Longitude _____________________________ Township____________ Range_____________

Does ☐ all or ☐ part of this project lie within the jurisdictional boundaries of a Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) as defined in 327 IAC 15-13? ☐ Yes ☐ No If yes, please name the MS4(s):
____

Project Site Owner and Project Contact Information:

Company Name (If Applicable): ____
Project Site Owner's Name (An Individual): ___________________________ Title/Position: _________________
Address: ____
City: _______________________________________ State: ______________________ Zip: ________________
Phone: _______________ FAX: ________________ E-Mail Address (If Available): ______________________

Ownership Status (check one): Governmental Agency: ☐ Federal ☐ State ☐ Local

Non-Governmental: ☐ Public ☐ Private ☐ Other (Explain): ____________________________
Contact Person: ____________________________ Affiliation with Project Site Owner: ____________________
Address (if different from above): ____
City: _______________________________________ State: ________________________ Zip: _______________
Phone: _______________ FAX: ________________ E-Mail Address (If Available): ________________________

Project Description:

☐ Residential-Single Family ☐ Residential-Multi-Family ☐ Commercial ☐ Industrial ☐ Other__________________

Discharge Information:

Name of Receiving Water:____
(If applicable, name of municipal operator of storm sewer. Please note that even if a retention pond is present on the property, the name of the nearest possible receiving water is required).

Project Acreage:

Total Acreage: ________________ Acres Proposed Acreage to be Disturbed: ________________ Acres
Total Impervious Surface Area (Estimated for Completed Project): ____________________ Square Feet

Timetable (Maximum of 5 Years):

Start Date: ________________ and Estimated End Date for all Land Disturbing Activity: _____________________

(Continued on Reverse Side)

Construction Plan Certification:

By signing this Notice of Intent letter, I certify the following:

A. The storm water quality measures included in the Construction Plan comply with the requirements of 327 IAC 15-5-6.5, 327 IAC 15-5-7, and 327 IAC 15-5-7.5;

B. the storm water pollution prevention plan complies with all applicable federal, state, and local storm water requirements;

C. the measures required by section 7 and 7.5 of this rule will be implemented in accordance with the storm water pollution prevention plan;

D. if the projected land disturbance is One (1) acre or more, the applicable Soil and Water Conservation District or other entity designated by the Department, has been sent a copy of the Construction Plan for review;

E. storm water quality measures beyond those specified in the storm water pollution prevention plan will be implemented during the life of the permit if necessary to comply with 327 IAC 15-5-7; and implementation of storm water quality measures will be inspected by trained individuals.

In addition to this form, I have enclosed the Following:

☐ Verification by the reviewing agency of acceptance of the Construction Plan.

☐ Proof of publication in a newspaper of general circulation in the affected area that notified the public that a construction activity is to commence, including all required elements contained in 327 IAC 15-5-5 (9).

☐ $100 check or money order payable to the Indiana Department of Environmental Management. If the project lies solely within the permitted jurisdiction of an MS4 and is regulated by the MS4 under 327 IAC 15-13 – a fee is not required with submittal of this Notice of Intent.

A permit issued under 327 IAC 15-5 is granted by the commissioner for a period of five (5) years from the date coverage commences. Once the five (5) year permit term duration is reached, a general permit issued under this rule will be considered expired, and, as necessary for construction activity continuation, a new Notice of Intent letter would need to be submitted ninety (90) days prior to the termination of coverage.

Project Site Owner Responsibility Statement:

By signing this Notice of Intent letter, I certify under penalty of law that this document and all attachments were prepared under my direction or supervision in accordance with a system designed to assure that qualified personnel properly gather and evaluate the information submitted. Based on my inquiry of the person or persons who manage the system, or those persons directly responsible for gathering the information, the information submitted is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, true, accurate, and complete. I am aware that there are significant penalties for submitting false information or violating the provisions of 327 IAC 15-5, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment for knowing violations.

Printed Name of Project Owner____

Signature of Project Owner ____________________________________ Date: __________________

This Notice of Intent must be signed by an individual meeting the signatory requirements in 327 IAC 15-4-3(g)

Mail this form to: **Indiana Department of Environmental Management**
Office of Water Quality, Storm Water (Rule 5) Desk
100 North Senate Avenue, P.O. Box 6015
Indianapolis, IN 46206-6015

327 IAC 15-5-6 (a) also requires a copy of the completed Notice of Intent letter be submitted to the local Soil and Water Conservation District or other entity designated by the Department, where the land disturbing activity is to occur.

Questions regarding the development of the Construction Plan and/or field implementation of 327 IAC 15-5 may be directed to your local Soil and Water Conservation District office or the Department of Natural Resources at 317-233-3870. Questions regarding the Notice of Intent may be directed to the Rule 5 contact person at 317/233-1864 or 800/451-6027 ext 31864.

State Form 47487 (R3 / 12-03)

Date: ______________________________
Project: ______________________________
Inspected by: ______________________________

Type of Inspection: ☐ Scheduled Weekly ☐ Rain Event

CONSTRUCTION SITE INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LOG

(To be Completed by Property Owner or Agent)

All stormwater pollution prevention BMPs shall be inspected and maintained as needed to ensure continued performance of their intended function during construction and shall continue until the entire site has been stabilized and a Notice of Termination has been issued. An inspection of the project site must be completed by the end of the next business day following each measurable storm event. If there are no measurable storm events within a given week, the site should be monitored at least once in that week. Maintenance and repair shall be conducted in accordance with the accepted site plans. This log shall be kept as a permanent record and must be made available to Lake County Surveyor, in an organized fashion, within forty-eight (48) hours upon request.

Yes	No	N/A		
			1.	Are all sediment control barriers, inlet protection and silt fences in place and functioning properly?
			2.	Are all erodible slopes protected from erosion through the implementation of acceptable soil stabilization practices?
			3.	Are all dewatering structures functioning properly?
			4.	Are all discharge points free of any noticeable pollutant discharges?
			5.	Are all discharge points free of any noticeable erosion or sediment transport?
			6.	Are designated equipment washout areas properly sited, clearly marked, and being utilized?
			7.	Are construction staging and parking areas restricted to areas designated as such on the plans?
			8.	Are temporary soil stockpiles in approved areas and properly protected?
			9.	Are construction entrances properly installed and being used and maintained?
			10.	Are "Do Not Disturb" areas designated on plan sheets clearly marked on-site and avoided?
			11.	Are public roads at intersections with site access roads being kept clear of sediment, debris, and mud?
			12.	Is spill response equipment on-site, logically located, and easily accessed in an emergency?
			13.	Are emergency response procedures and contact information clearly posted?
			14.	Is solid waste properly contained?
			15.	Is a stable access provided to the solid waste storage and pick-up area?
			16.	Are hazardous materials, waste or otherwise, being properly handled and stored?
			1	Have previously recommended corrective actions been implemented?

Date: ________________________________
Project: ________________________________
Inspected by: ________________________________

Type of Inspection: ☐ Scheduled Weekly ☐ Rain Event

			7 .

If you answered "no" to any of the above questions, describe any corrective action which must be taken to remedy the problem and when the corrective actions are to be completed.

____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____

Insert Local
Logo Here

Certification of Completion & Compliance

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLETION & COMPLIANCE

Address of premises on which land alteration was accomplished:______________________________
____
____

Inspection Date(s):__________________________ Permit Number:________________________________

Relative to plans prepared by:_________________________ on__________________________________
(date)

I hereby certify that:

1. I am familiar with drainage requirements applicable to such land alteration (as set forth in the Stormwater Management Ordinance of Lake County); and

2. I (or a person under my direct supervision) have personally inspected the completed work and examined the drainage permit and its conditions, as-built plans, and final drainage calculations consistent with as-built conditions performed pursuant to the above referenced drainage permit; and

3. To the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, such land alteration has been performed and completed in conformity with all such drainage requirements, except ____________
____
____

Signature: ______________________________ Date: ____________________________

Typed or Printed Name: ______________________________ Phone: (___)______________________

(SEAL)

Business Address: ______________________________
____
____
____

SURVEYOR ENGINEER
(circle one)

Indiana Registration No.______________________

RULE 5 –

Notice of Termination (NOT)

Storm Water Runoff Associated with Construction Activity
NPDES General Permit Rule 327 IAC 15-5 (Rule 5)

State Form 51514 (R / 1-04)

INDIANA DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT

For questions regarding this form, contact:
IDEM – Rule 5 Coordinator
100 North Senate Avenue, Rm 1255
P.O. Box 6015
Indianapolis, IN 46206-6015
Phone: (317) 233-1864 or
(800) 451-6027, ext. 31864 (within Indiana)
Web Access:
http://www.in.gov/idem/water/npdes/permits/wetwthr/storm/rule5.html

NOTE:

- This Notice of Termination must be signed by an individual meeting the signatory requirements in 327 IAC 15-4-3(g).
- Please submit the completed Notice of Termination form to the SWCD, DNR-DSC, or other Entity Designated by the Department as the reviewing agency. The request for termination will be reviewed for concurrence and either returned to the Project Site Owner or forwarded to the IDEM.

Submission of this Notice of Termination letter constitutes notice to the Commissioner that the project site owner is applying for Termination of Coverage under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) General Permit Rule for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity.

Project Name and Location:

Permit Number: ________________
Project Name: ____ County: _________________________
Company Name (If Applicable): ____
Project Site Owner's Name (An Individual): ____
Address: ____
City: ____ State: ___________________ Zip: ________________
Phone: ________________ FAX: _______________ E-Mail Address (If Available): ___________________________

This Notice of Termination is Being Submitted for the Following:

Select one of the three Options that apply to Permit Termination by checking the appropriate box, complete all information associated with that option, and complete the "Project Site Owner Responsibility Statement".

Option # 1

☐ **Certification for Change of Ownership:**

(Does not Apply to the Sale of Individual lots within the Permitted Acreage; only the Sale of the Entire Project Site as Originally Permitted)

By Signing this Notice of Termination, I Certify the Following:

A. The project was sold; I am no longer the project site owner as was designated in my Notice of Intent. The new owner of the project site is:
Company Name (If Applicable): ____
Project Site Owner's Name (An Individual): ____
Address: ____
City: _________________________________ State: ______________________ Zip: ________________
Phone: ______________ FAX: ______________ E-Mail Address (If Available): ____________________

B. I have notified the new Project Site Owner of his/her responsibilities to comply with 327 IAC 15-5 and the requirements associated with the rule including filing a new Notice of Intent.

Option # 2

☐**Certification for Termination of Construction Activities:**

By Signing this Notice of Termination, I Certify the Following:

A. All land disturbing activities, including construction on all building lots have been completed and the entire site has been stabilized;
B. No future land disturbing activities will occur on this project site;
C. All temporary erosion and sediment control measures have been removed; and
D. A copy of this notice has been sent to the appropriate SWCD or other designated entity.

Option # 3

☐**Notice of Termination to Obtain Early Release from Compliance with 327 IAC 15-5**

By Signing this Notice of Termination, I Certify the Following:

A. The remaining, undeveloped acreage does not exceed five (5) acres, with contiguous areas not to exceed one (1) acre.
B. A map of the project site, clearly identifying all remaining undeveloped lots, is attached to this letter. The map must be accompanied by a list of names and addresses of individual lot owners or individual lot operators of all undeveloped lots.
C. All public and common improvements, including infrastructure, have been completed and permanently stabilized and have been transferred to the appropriate local entity.
D. The remaining acreage does not pose a significant threat to the integrity of the infrastructure, adjacent properties, or water quality.
E. All permanent storm water quality measures have been implemented and are operational.

Upon Written Notification of the Department the Project Site Owner Certifies that he/she will Notify:

A. All current individual lot owners and all subsequent individual lot owners of the remaining undeveloped acreage and acreage with construction activity that they are responsible for complying with section 7.5 of 327 IAC 15-5 *(the remaining individual lot owners do not need to submit a Notice of Intent letter or Notice of Termination letter)*; and
B. The individual lot owners of the requirements to install and maintain appropriate measures to prevent sediment from leaving the individual building lot and maintain all erosion and sediment control measures that are to remain on-site as part of the construction plan.

Project Site Owner Responsibility Statement:

By signing this Notice of Termination letter, I certify under penalty of law that this document and all attachments were prepared under my direction or supervision in accordance with a system designed to assure that qualified personnel properly gather and evaluate the information submitted. Based on my inquiry of the person or persons who manage the system, or those persons directly responsible for gathering the information, the information submitted is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, true, accurate, and complete. I am aware that there are significant penalties for submitting false information, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment for knowing violations.

Printed Name of Project Site Owner:____

Signature of Project Site Owner: ____

Date: ______________________

This Notice of Termination must be signed by an individual meeting the signatory requirements in 327 IAC 15-4-3(g).

Please submit the completed Notice of Termination form to the SWCD, DNR-DSC, or other Entity Designated by the Department as the reviewing agency. The request for termination will be reviewed for concurrence and either returned to the Project Site Owner or forwarded to the IDEM.

For Agency Use Only

NOTICE OF TERMINATION INSPECTION

(To be Completed by the Lake County Surveyor or Agent)

All construction sites shall undergo a final inspection by the Lake County Surveyor following submittal of a Notice of Termination (NOT) by the project owner to ensure the site is stabilized and that post construction BMPs have been properly installed.

Yes	No	N/A	
			1. Have all earth disturbing activities been completed?
			2. Are all soils stabilized with either vegetation or mulch?
			3. Are all drainageways stabilized with either vegetation, rip rap, or other armament?
			4. Have all temporary erosion and sediment control measures been removed?
			5. Has all construction waste, trash, and debris been removed from the site?
			6. Have all permanent stormwater quality BMPs been installed in accordance with the plans, specifications, and details?
			7. Are all permanent BMPs free of sediment accumulation resulting from construction activities?

If you answered "no" to any of the above questions, describe any corrective action which must be taken to remedy the problem and when the corrective actions are to be completed.

(Single lot erosion control figure deleted – see website)

Bioretention Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project:____

Location:____

Date: ____

Time: ______________________________

Inspector:____

Title: ______________________________

Signature:____

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Debris Cleanout		
Bioretention and contributing areas clean of debris (litter, branches, etc.)		
No dumping of yard wastes into BMP		
2. Vegetation		
Plant height not less than design water depth but not greater than 6 inches		
Observed plant types consistent with accepted plans		
Plants covering greater than 85% of total BMP surface area		
Plant community appears thick and healthy		
No evidence of erosion		
3. Sediment Deposits/Accumulation		

No evidence of sediment buildup around check dams or energy dissipaters.		
Sumps are not more than 50% full of sediment		
Sediment is not >20% of BMP design depth.		
4. Filter Bed		
Dewaters between storms		
Filter bed is not blocked or filled inappropriately.		
5. Outlet/Overflow Spillway		
Good Condition, no need for repair		
No evidence of erosion or downstream scour.		
Outlets are free of blockages.		

Actions to be taken:

Wetland Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project:____

Location:____

Date: ________________________________

Time: ______________________

Inspector: ________________________________

Title: ______________________

Signature:______________________________________

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Embankment and Emergency Spillway		
Healthy vegetation with at least 85% ground cover.		
No signs of erosion on embankment.		
No animal burrows.		
Embankment is free of cracking, bulging, or sliding.		
Embankment is free of woody vegetation.		
Embankment is free of leaks or seeps		
Emergency spillway is clear of obstructions.		
2. Riser and Principal Spillway		
Low flow outlet free of obstruction.		

Trash rack is not blocked or damaged.		
Riser is free of excessive sediment buildup		
Outlet pipe is in good condition.		
Control valve is operational		
Outfall channels are stable and free of scouring.		
3. Wetland		
Plants covering greater than 85% of total wetland surface area (excluding open water areas)		
Observed plant types consistent with accepted plans		
No evidence of excessive sediment accumulation in wetland area		
Water depths consistent with accepted plans		
No evidence of erosion on banks.		
Wetland areas clean of debris (litter, branches, etc.)		
No evidence of dumping of yard wastes into BMP		
4. Forebay		
Sediment is being collected by forebay(s)		
Forebay is not in need of cleanout (less than 50% full)		

Actions to be taken:

Infiltration Trench Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project:____

Location:____

Date: ____

Time: ______________________________

Inspector:____

Title: ______________________________

Signature:____

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Debris Cleanout		
Trench surface clear of debris		
Inflow pipes clear of debris		
Overflow spillway clear of debris		
Inlet area clear of debris		
2. Sediment Traps or Forebays		
Obviously trapping sediment		
Greater than 50% of storage volume remaining		
3. Trench		
Trench dewaters between storms		
No evidence of sedimentation in trench		
Sediment accumulation doesn't yet require cleanout		
4. Inlets		

Good condition		
No evidence of erosion		

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
5. Outlet/Overflow Spillway		
Good condition, no need for repair		
No evidence of erosion		
6. Aggregate Repairs		
Surface of aggregate clean		
Top layer of stone does not need replacement		
Trench does not need rehabilitation		

Actions to be taken:

Infiltration Basin Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project: ______________________________

Location: ______________________________

Date: ______________________________

Time: ______________________________

Inspector: ______________________________

Title: ______________________________

Signature: ______________________________

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Debris Cleanout		
Basin bottom clear of debris		
Inlet clear of debris		
Outlet clear of debris		
Emergency spillway clear of debris		
2. Sediment Traps or Forebays		
Obviously trapping sediment		
Greater than 50% of storage volume remaining		
3. Vegetation		
Mowing done when needed		
No evidence of erosion		
4. Dewatering		
Basin dewatered between storms		

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
5. Sediment Cleanout of Basin		
No evidence of sedimentation		
Sediment accumulation does not yet require cleanout		
6. Inlets		
Good condition		
No evidence of erosion		
7. Outlets/Overflow Spillway		
Good condition, no need for repair		
No evidence of erosion		
8. Structural Repairs		
Embankment in good repair		
Side slopes are stable		
No evidence of erosion		
9. Fences/Access Repairs		
Fences in good condition		
No damage which would allow undesirable entry		
Lock and gate function adequate		
Access point in good condition		

Actions to be taken:

Media Filtration Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project: ______________________________

Location: ______________________________

Date: ______________________________

Time: ______________________________

Inspector: ______________________________

Title: ______________________________

Signature: ______________________________

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Debris Cleanout		
Contributing areas clean of debris		
Filtration facility clean of debris		
Inlet and outlets clear of debris		
2. Oil and Grease		
No evidence of filter surface clogging		
Activities in drainage area minimize oil and grease entry		
3. Vegetation		
Contributing drainage area stabilized		
No evidence of erosion		
Area mowed and clippings removed		
4. Water Retention Where Required		
Water holding chambers at normal pool		
No evidence of leakage		

Actions to be taken:

Filter Strip Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project:____

Location:____

Date: ________________________________

Time: ______________________

Inspector:________________________________

Title: ______________________

Signature: ____

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Vegetation		
Observed plant types consistent with accepted plans		
Vegetation is healthy		
Plants covering greater than 85% of total BMP surface area		
Grass height not more than 6 inches		
No evidence of concentrated flows		
No evidence of erosion		
2. Level Spreader		
Lip of spreader showing no signs of erosion		
Sediment noted in spreader?		

Actions to be taken:

Vegetated Swale Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project:____

Location:____

Date: ______________________________

Time: ____________________

Inspector:______________________________

Title: ____________________

Signature:______________________________________

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Debris Cleanout		
Contributing drainage areas free from debris		
2. Vegetation		
Mowing performed when needed		
No evidence of erosion		
3. Check Dams or Energy Dissipaters		
No evidence of flow going around structure		
No evidence of erosion at the downstream toe		
Soil permeability		
4. Sediment Forebay		
Sediment cleanout not needed (clean out when 50% full)		

Actions to be taken:

Detention Pond Operation, Maintenance, and Management Inspection Checklist

Project:____

Location:____

Date: ______________________________

Time: ____________________

Inspector:______________________________

Title: ____________________

Signature:_____________________________________

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
1. Embankment and emergency spillway		
Healthy vegetation with at least 85% ground cover.		
No signs of erosion on embankment.		
No animal burrows.		
Embankment is free of cracking, bulging, or sliding.		
Embankment is free of woody vegetation.		
Embankment is free of leaks or seeps		
Emergency spillway is clear of obstructions.		
Vertical/horizontal alignment of top of dam "As-Built"		
2. Riser and principal spillway		
Low flow outlet free of obstruction.		
Trash rack is not blocked or damaged.		
Riser is free of excessive sediment buildup		

Outlet pipe is in good condition.		
Control valve is operational		
Outfall channels are stable and free of scouring.		

Maintenance Item	Satisfactory/ Unsatisfactory	Comments
3. Permanent Pool (Wet Ponds)		
No Evidence of undesirable vegetation		
No accumulation of floating or floatable debris		
No evidence of shoreline scour or erosion		
4. Sediment Forebays		
Sediment is being collected by forebay(s)		
Forebay is not in need of cleanout (less than 50% full, mark on sediment marker visible)		
5. Dry Pond Areas		
Healthy vegetation with at least 85% ground cover.		
No undesirable woody vegetation		
Low flow channels clear of obstructions		
No evidence of sediment and/or trash accumulation		
6. Condition of Outfall into Ponds		
No riprap failures		
No evidence of slope erosion or scouring		
Storm drain pipes are in good condition, with no evidence of non-stormwater discharges		
Endwalls/Headwalls are in good condition		

Green Roof Maintenance Inspection Checklist

Owner Name
Address of property
Owner Phone Number

Inspector:
Date:
Time:
Weather: Rainfall over previous 2-3 days? Site conditions:
Owner change since last inspection?: Y N

Mark items in the table below using the following key:

- **X** Needs immediate attention
- – Not Applicable
- ✓ Okay
- **?** Clarification Required

Green Roof Components:

Items Inspected	Checked		Maintenance Needed		Inspection Frequency
STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS:	Y	N	Y	N	**A**
1. Foundation checks (e.g. are there any leaks or structural deficiencies)?					
2. Tears or perforation of membrane (contact manufacturer for repair or replacement)?					
3. Clogged outlets (remove any sediment and plant debris if necessary)?					
4. Standing water present (all facilities shall drain within 24 to 48 hours. Record time/date, weather, and site conditions when ponding occurs)?					
VEGETATION: (plant material shall cover 90% of the facility)					**M, AMS**
5. Dead or stressed vegetation?					
Tall or sun scorched grass?					
6. Weeds?					
GROWING/FILTER MEDIUM:					**M, AMS**
7. Exposed soils?					
8. Gullies?					
9. Ponding?					
OTHER					**A**
10. Are mechanical units free of leaks and spills?					
11. Is there any threat to Public Health? (e.g mosquito larvae or rats)					
12. Other (describe)?					

Inspection Frequency Key A= Annual, M= Monthly, AMS= After Major Storm

COMMENTS:

OVERALL CONDITION OF FACILITY:

In accordance with approved design plans? Y / N

In accordance with As Built plans? Y / N

Area of roof covered by green roof on plans = ________

Area of roof covered at time of inspection = __________

Maintenance required as detailed above?Y / N

Compliance with other consent conditions? Y / N

Comments: ____

____

Dates by which maintenance must be completed: _______ / ___ / ___

Dates by which outstanding information as per consent conditions is required by: __________ / ___ / ____

Inspector’s signature: ____

Consent Holder/Engineer/Agent’s signature: ____

Consent Holder/Engineer/Agent’s name printed: ____

Appendix C
Approved Minimum Specifications for Construction Water Quality Practices / Construction BMPs (CN)

(Check the Lake County Surveyor's Office website for the most up-to-date approved practices – http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org)

Table C-1
Approved Stormwater Pollution Control Practices for Construction Sites

Practice No.	BMP Description	Applicability / Limitations	Fact Sheet
Administrative			
1a	Permitting (Stormwater, Floodway, Wetland)	All Sites as required by local, state and federal regulations	N/A
1b	Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWP3)	All sites with 1 acre or more disturbance	N/A
1c	Posting Rule 5 NOI	All sites with 1 acre or more disturbance	N/A
1d	Self-monitoring	All permitted sites	N/A
1e	Apply for Rule 5 NOT	All sites with Rule 5 permit	N/A
Planning - Sequencing			
2a	Construction Sequencing	All permitted sites requiring a permit	CN - 101
Planning - Site Preservation / Protection			
3a	Tree Preservation and Protection	Strongly recommended for nearly all sites with desirable trees	CN 120
3b	Wetland Areas Protection	All delineated wetlands	CN 121
Site Access / Traffic Control Practices			
4a	Temporary Construction Entrances	All sites	CN 114
4b	Wheel Wash	All sites	CN 102
4c	Street Sweeping	All sites	CN 122
Filtration / Settling - Perimeter Sediment Control			
5a	Silt Fence (Short Term)	Projects lasting no longer than 3 months (see limitations)	CN 107
5b	Silt Fence (Long term)	Projects lasting >3 months (see limitations)	CN 107
5c	Coir Logs		
Filtration / Settling - Sediment Traps			
6a	Temporary Sediment Trap/Basin	5 acre maximum contributing drainage area	CN 123
Surface Stabilization - Temporary Cover			
7b	Temporary Seeding (including dormant seeding)	Areas of bare soil where additional work is not scheduled to be performed for a minimum of 14 days	CN 124
Surface Stabilization - Permanent Cover			
8a	Fertilization & Soil Amendments	Areas as needed based on soil testing	CN 126
8b	Permanent Seeding	All areas of bare soil at final grade	CN 125

Practice No.	BMP Description	Applicability / Limitations	Fact Sheet
8c	Erosion Control Blanket (Surface)	Final surface stabilization	CN 108
Material Management - Concrete Washout			
9a	Concrete Washout Pit (Above Ground)	All sites utilizing concrete	CN 127
9b	Concrete Washout Pit (Below Ground)	All sites utilizing concrete	CN 128
9c	Manufactured Concrete Washout Basins	All sites utilizing concrete	CN 116
Surface Stabilization -Temporary Diversion			
10a	Diversion Berm	Up-slope and down-slope sides of construction site, above disturbed slopes within construction site	CN 129
10b	Slope Drains		CN 130
Filtration / Settling -Check Dams			
11a	Rock Check Dam	2 acres maximum contributing drainage area	CN 123
11b	Manufactured Temporary Permeable Berms	For swales (max. 38% slopes)	CN 110
11c	Silt Tubes	Sheet flow, sheet flow perimeter barrier	CN 117
Filtration / Settling - Inlet Protections			
12a	Rigid Frame Yard inlet Protection	Maximum flow rate must be <= WQr	CN 131
12b	Yard Inlet Protection	Small areas only	
Surface Stabilization - Outlet Protection			
13a	Permanent Transition Mats for Outlets	Must cover entire outlet surface area	CN 113
Surface Stabilization – Wind Soil Suspension			
14a	Dust Control Treatments	Must be reapplied as needed	CN 115
14b	Drive Watering	Must be continually applied in dry weather	CN 132
Filtration / Settling – Dewatering Bag			
15a	Dewatering Bags	Must be sized for maximum pump rate	CN 117103
Filtration / Settling – Polymers			
16a	Floculating Polymers	Must be sized for maximum anticipated WQr	CN 118
Surface Stabilization – Soil Reinforcement			
17a	Long-Term Mats		CN 109

BMP CN – 101
Planning –
Construction Sequencing

DESCRIPTION

The construction sequence schedule is an orderly listing of all major land-disturbing activities together with the necessary stormwater pollution prevention practices planned for the project. This type of schedule guides the contractor on work to be done before other work is started so that serious erosion and sedimentation problems can be avoided. Sequencing a construction project reduces the amount and duration of soil exposed to erosion by wind, rain, runoff, and vehicle tracking.

ADVANTAGE

1. Following a specified work schedule that coordinates the timing of land-disturbing activities and the installation of control measures is perhaps the most cost-effective way of controlling erosion during construction. The removal of surface ground cover leaves a site vulnerable to accelerated erosion. Construction procedures that limit land clearing, provide timely installation of erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore protective cover quickly can significantly reduce the erosion potential of a site.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. Avoid rainy periods.
2. Schedule projects to disturb only small portions of the site at any one time. Complete grading as soon as possible. Immediately stabilize the disturbed portion before grading the next portion. Practice staged seeding in order to revegetate cut and fill slopes as the work progresses.

REFERENCES

See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information as well as a sample sequence schedule.

BMP CN – 102
Temporary Construction Entrance / Roadway Maintenance

DESCRIPTION

When a stabilized construction entrance is not preventing sediment from being tracked onto pavement, a wheel wash may be installed. Wheel washing is generally an effective BMP when installed with careful attention to topography. For example, a wheel wash can be detrimental if installed at the top of a slope abutting a right-of-way where the water from the dripping truck can run unimpeded into the street. Pressure washing combined with an adequately sized and surfaced pad with direct drainage to a large 10-foot x 10-foot sump can be very effective.

ADVANTAGES

1. Wheel washes reduce the amount of sediment transported onto paved roads by motor vehicles.

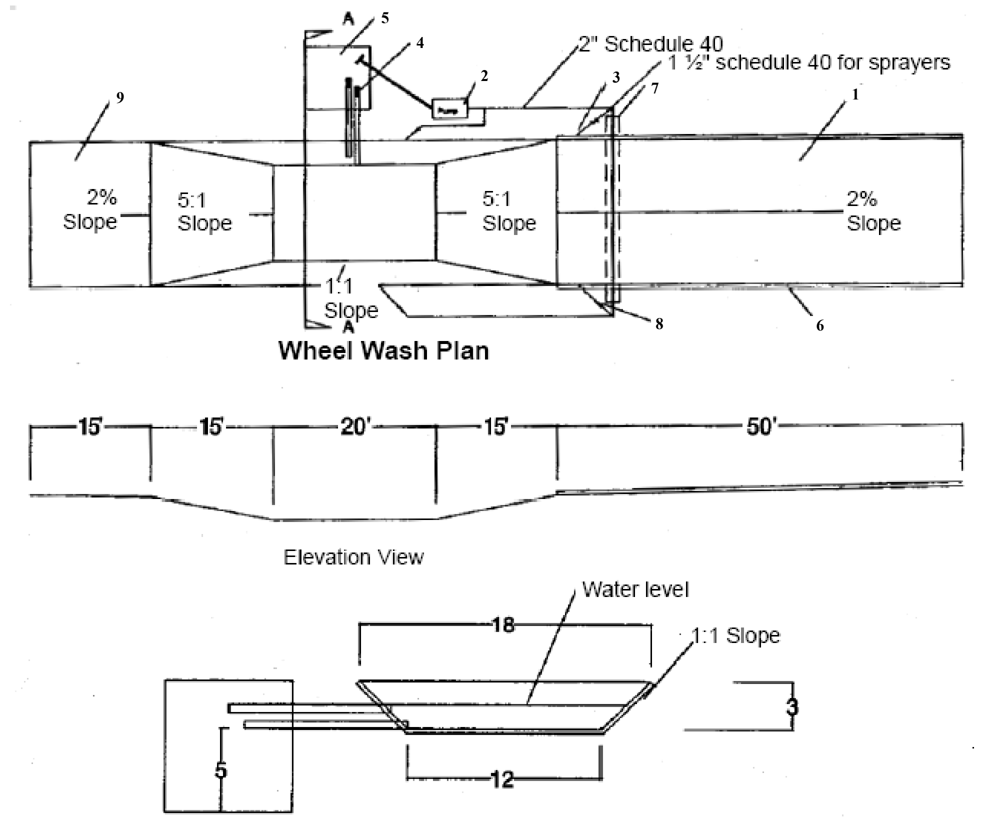
DESIGN CRITERIA

1. Suggested details are shown in Figure CN-102-A. The Lake County Surveyor may allow other designs.
2. Minimize the number of entrances.
3. A minimum of 6 inches of asphalt treated base (ATB) over crushed base material or 8 inches over a good subgrade is recommended to pave the wheel wash.
4. Use a low clearance truck to test the wheel wash before paving. Either a belly dump or lowboy will work well to test clearance.
5. Keep the water level from 12 to 14 inches deep to avoid damage to truck hubs and filling the truck tongues with water.
6. Midpoint spray nozzles are only needed in extremely muddy conditions.
7. Wheel wash systems should be designed with a small grade change, 6 to 12 inches for a 10-foot-wide pond, to allow sediment to flow to the low side of pond to help prevent re-suspension of sediment.
8. A drainpipe with a 2- to 3-foot riser should be installed on the low side of the pond to allow for easy cleaning and refilling.
9. Polymers may be used to promote coagulation and flocculation in a closed-loop system. Polyacrylamide (PAM) added to the wheel wash water at a rate of 0.25 - 0.5 pounds per 1,000 gallons of water increases effectiveness and reduces cleanup time.
10. If PAM is already being used for dust or erosion control and is being applied by a water truck, the same truck can be used to change the wash water.
11. The wheel wash should start out the day with fresh water. The wash water should be changed a minimum of once per day.
12. On large earthwork jobs where more than 10-20 trucks per hour are expected, the wash water will need to be changed more often.

13. Wheel wash or tire bath wastewater shall be discharged to a separate on-site treatment system, such as closed-loop recirculation or land application, or to the sanitary sewer with proper local sewer utility approval.

REFERENCE

See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.



Section A-A
NTS

Notes:

1. Asphalt construction entrance 6 in. asphalt treated base (ATB).
2. 3-inch trash pump with floats on the suction hose.
3. Midpoint spray nozzles, if needed.
4. 6-inch sewer pipe with butterfly valves. Bottom one is a drain. Locate top pipe's invert 1 foot above bottom of wheel wash.
5. 8 foot x 8 foot sump with 5 feet of catch. Build so can be cleaned with trackhoe.
6. Asphalt curb on the low road side to direct water back to pond.
7. 6-inch sleeve under road.
8. Ball valves.
9. 15 foot. ATB apron to protect ground from splashing water.

Figure CN-102-A

BMP CN – 103
Filtration / Settling –
Dewatering Structures

DESCRIPTION

Water which is pumped from a construction site usually contains a large amount of sediment. A dewatering structure is designed to remove the sediment before water is released off-site.

This practice includes several types of dewatering structures which have different applications dependent upon site conditions and types of operation. Other innovative techniques for accomplishing the same purpose are encouraged, but only after specific plans and details are submitted to the Lake County Surveyor's Office and approved by the applicable entity.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. A dewatering structure must be sized (and operated) to allow pumped water to flow through the filtering device without overtopping the structure.
2. Material from any required excavation shall be stored in an area and protected in a manner that will prevent sediments from eroding and moving off-site.
3. An excavated basin (applicable to "Straw Bale/Silt Fence Pit") may be lined with filter fabric to help reduce scour and to prevent the inclusion of soil from within the structure.
4. Design criteria more specific to each particular dewatering device can be found below.
5. A dewatering structure may not be needed if there is a well-stabilized, vegetated area onsite to which water may be discharged. The area must be stabilized so that it can filter sediment and at the same time withstand the velocity of the discharged water without eroding. A minimum filtering length of 75 feet must be available in order for such a method to be feasible.
6. The filtering devices must be inspected frequently and repaired or replaced once the sediment build-up prevents the structure from functioning as designed.
7. The accumulated sediment which is removed from a dewatering device must be spread on-site and stabilized or disposed of at an approved disposal site as per approved plan.

DEWATERING BAG

DESCRIPTION

A dewatering bag is designed to control sediment discharge in dewatering applications where water is being pumped. When pumped water reaches the dewatering bag, the suspended solids are allowed to settle out of the slowed flow and are captured by the bag. The dewatering bag shall be a bag sewn of nonwoven fabric in the U.S.A. using a double needle machine and a high strength thread. The bag shall have a spout opening large enough to accommodate at least a four (4) inch pump discharge hose with an attached strap to tie unit closed.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. The size of the dewatering bag and pump discharge rate should be documented in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. Location of proposed dewatering pump discharge.

2. Specification of dewater bag.

3. Inspection / replacement guidelines and / or checklist.

INSTALLATION

- Install on flat stable surface, free of sharp objects.
- Locate bag where discharge water will not suspend or re-suspend sediment.

MAINTENANCE

- Bag should be replaced when ½ full.

SPECIFICATIONS

Dewatering bags shall meet the following specifications:

BMP CN – 103
Filtration / Settling –
Dewatering Structures

Property *	Test Method	Units	Value
Grab Tensile Strength	ASTM D 4632	N (lbs)	912 (205)
Grab Tensile Elongation	ASTM D 4632	%	50
CBR Puncture Strength	ASTM D 6241	N (lbs)	2225 (500)
Trapezoid Tear Strength	ASTM D 4533	N (lbs)	356 (80)
Apparent Opening Size (AOS)	ASTM D 4751	mm (US Sieve)	0.18 (80)
Permittivity	ASTM D 4491	sec^{-1}	1.1
Flow Rate	ASTM D 4491	$I/min/m^2$ $(gal/min/ft^2)$	3870 (95)
UV Resistance (at 500 hours)	ASTM D 4355	% strength retained	70
Weight (Typical)	ASTM D 5261	g/m^2 (oz/yd^2)	271 (8.0)
Thickness (Typical)	ASTM D 5199	mm (mils)	1.8 (72)

*Minimum Average Roll Values (MARV)

LIMITATIONS

- The size of the bag may limit the discharge rate of the pump.
- Proper disposal of the bagged material may be a concern.

Filter Box (see Figure CN-103-A)

- The box selected should be made of steel, sturdy wood or other materials suitable to handle the pressure requirements imposed by the volume of water. Normally readily available 55 gallon drums welded top to bottom will suffice in most cases.
- Bottom of the box shall be made porous by drilling holes (or some other method).

- Coarse aggregate shall be placed over the holes at a minimum depth of 12 inches, metal “hardware” cloth may need to be placed between the aggregate and the holes if holes are drilled larger than the majority of the stone.
- As a result of the fast rate of flow of sediment-laden water through the aggregate, the effluent must be directed over a well-vegetated strip of at least 50 feet after leaving the base of the filter box.
- The box shall be sized as follows:

  Pump discharge (gallons/min.) x 16 = cubic feet of storage required
- Once the water level nears the top of the box, the pump must be shut off while the box drains and additional capacity is made available.
- The box shall be designed/constructed to allow for emergency flow over the top of this box.
- Clean-out of the box is required once one-third of the original capacity is depleted due to sediment accumulation. The tank shall be clearly marked showing the clean-out point.
- If the stone filter does become clogged with sediment so that it no longer adequately performs its function, the stones must be pulled away from the inlet, cleaned and replaced.
- **Using a filter box only allows for minimal settling time for sediment particles; therefore, it should only be used when site conditions restrict the use of the other methods**.
-

REFERENCE

1. United States Army Corps of Engineers, Handbook for the Preparation of Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans for Construction Activities, 1997 or later

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

BMP CN – 103
Filtration / Settling –
Dewatering Structures

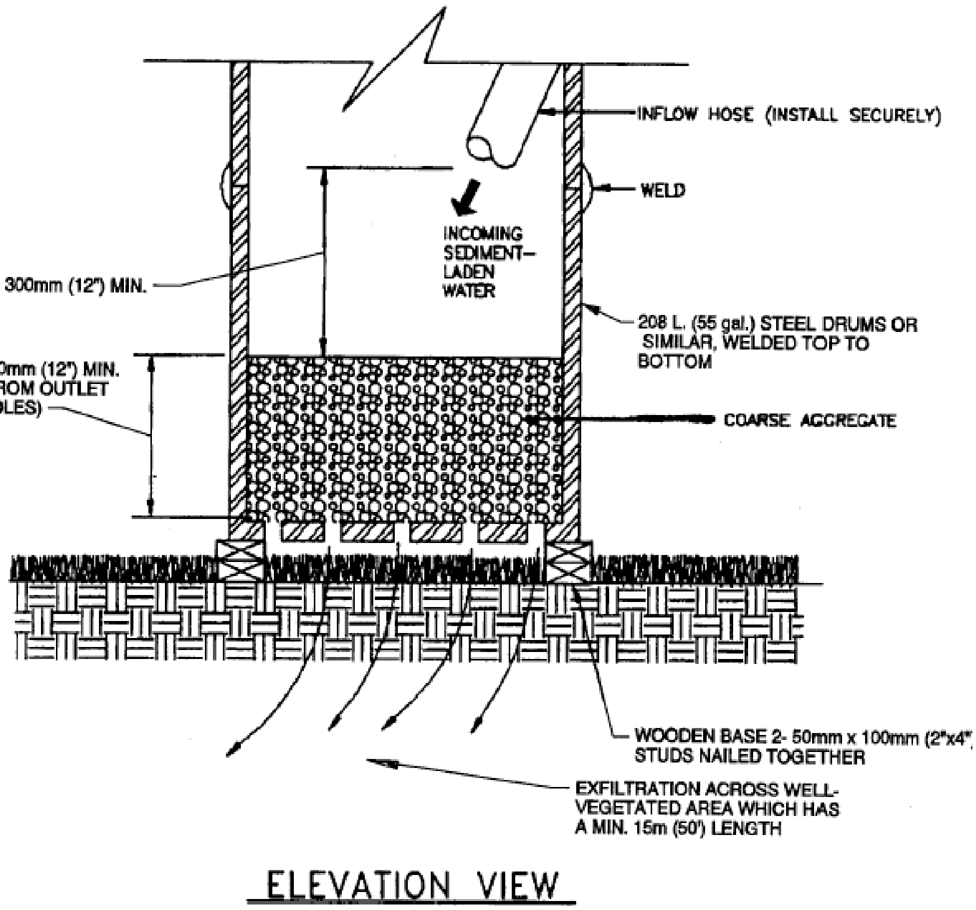


Figure CN-103-A
Filter Box

BMP CN – 104
Planning –
Spill Prevention and Control

DESCRIPTION

These procedures and practices are implemented to prevent and control spills in a manner that minimizes or prevents the discharge of spilled material to the drainage system or watercourses.

This best management practice (BMP) applies to ALL construction projects. Spill control procedures are implemented anytime chemicals and/or hazardous substances are stored. Substances may include, but are not limited to:

- Fuels
- Lubricants
- Antifreeze
- Paints
- Soil stabilizers/binders
- Dust Palliatives
- Herbicides
- Fertilizers
- Deicing/anti-icing chemicals
- Other petroleum distillates
- Concrete rinse

To the extent that the work can be accomplished safely, spills of oil, petroleum products, sanitary and septic wastes, and substances listed under 40 CFR parts 110, 117, and 302, and shall be contained and cleaned up immediately.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP) REQUIREMENTS

The following items must be included on the SWPPP and clearly labeled:

1. Spill Kit location

2. Fueling and fuel storage area.

3. A note on the plans requiring only trained individuals are permitted to dispense hazardous materials and respond to spills of hazardous materials.

LIMITATIONS

1. This BMP only applies to spills on the site.
2. Procedures and practices presented in this BMP are general. The contractor and sub-contractor shall identify appropriate practices for the specific materials used or

stored on-site in advance of their arrival at the site. The developer shall remain ultimately responsible for spill prevention and control until acceptance of the right-of-way by the Lake County Highway Department.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. To the extent that it doesn't compromise clean up activities, spills shall be covered and protected from stormwater runoff during rainfall.
2. Spills shall not be buried or washed with water.
3. Used clean up materials, contaminated materials, and recovered spill material that is no longer suitable for the intended purpose shall be stored and disposed of in conformance with BMP CN-106: Hazardous Waste Management.
4. Water used for cleaning and decontamination shall not be allowed to enter storm drains or watercourses and shall be collected and disposed of in accordance with BMP CN-106: Hazardous Waste Management.
5. Water overflow or minor water spillage shall be contained and shall not be allowed to discharge into drainage facilities or watercourses.
6. Proper storage, clean-up and spill reporting instruction for hazardous materials stored or used on the project site shall be posted at all times in an open, conspicuous and accessible location.
7. Waste storage areas shall be kept clean, well organized and equipped with ample clean-up supplies as appropriate for the materials being stored. Perimeter controls, containment structures, covers and liners shall be repaired or replaced as needed to maintain proper function.
8. Verify weekly that spill control and clean up materials (e.g. spill kit) are located near material storage, unloading, and use areas.
9. Update spill prevention and control plans and stock appropriate clean-up materials whenever changes occur in the types of chemicals used or stored onsite.

<u>Cleanup and Storage Procedures for Minor Spills</u>

- Minor spills typically involve small quantities of oil, gasoline, paint, etc., which can be controlled by the first responder at the discovery of the spill.
- Use absorbent materials on small spills rather than hosing down or burying the spill.
- Remove the absorbent materials promptly and dispose of properly.
- The practice commonly followed for a minor spill is:
    - Contain the spread of the spill.
    - Recover spilled materials.
    - Clean the contaminated area and/or properly dispose of contaminated materials.

Cleanup and Storage Procedures for Semi-Significant Spills

- Semi-significant spills still can be controlled by the first responder along with the aid of other personnel such as laborers and the foreman, etc. This response may require the cessation of all other activities.
- Clean up spills immediately:
- Notify the project foreman immediately. The foreman shall notify the appropriate hazardous materials response agencies.
- Contain spread of the spill.
- If the spill occurs on paved or impermeable surfaces, clean up using "dry" methods (absorbent materials, cat litter and/or rags). Contain the spill by encircling with absorbent materials and do not let the spill spread widely.
- If the spill occurs in dirt areas, immediately contain the spill by constructing an earthen dike. Dig up and properly dispose of contaminated soil.
- If the spill occurs during rain, cover spill with tarps or other material to prevent contaminating runoff.

Cleanup and Storage Procedures for Significant/Hazardous Spills

- For significant or hazardous spills that cannot be controlled by personnel in the immediate vicinity, notify the local emergency response by dialing 911. In addition to 911, the contractor will notify the proper county officials. It is the contractor's responsibility to have all emergency phone numbers at the construction site.
- For spills of federal reportable quantities, in conformance with the requirements in 40 CFR parts 110,119, and 302, the contractor shall notify the National Response Center at (800) 424-8802.
- Notification shall first be made by telephone and followed up with a written report.
- The services of a spills contractor or a Haz-Mat team shall be obtained immediately. Construction personnel shall not attempt to clean up the spill until the appropriate and qualified personnel have arrived at the job site.

REFERENCE

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

BMP CN – 105
Material Management -
Solid Waste Management

DESCRIPTION

Solid waste management procedures and practices are designed to minimize or eliminate the discharge of pollutants to the drainage system or to watercourses as a result of the creation, stockpiling, or removal of construction site wastes.

Solid waste management procedures and practices are implemented on ALL construction projects that generate solid wastes.

Solid wastes include but are not limited to:

1. Construction wastes including brick, mortar, timber, steel and metal scraps, sawdust, pipe and electrical cuttings, non-hazardous equipment parts, Styrofoam and other materials used to transport and package construction materials.
2. Landscaping wastes, including vegetative material, plant containers, and packaging materials.
3. Litter, including food containers, beverage cans, coffee cups, paper bags, plastic wrappers, and smoking materials, including litter generated by the public.

LIMITATIONS

1. Temporary stockpiling of certain construction wastes may not necessitate stringent drainage related controls during the non-rainy season.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. ALL debris containers including dumpsters of sufficient size and number shall be provided to contain the solid waste generated by the project and properly serviced. Dumpster must also be covered to prevent entry of rainfall and suspension of material by wind.
2. Littering on the project site shall be prohibited.
3. To prevent clogging of the storm drainage system, litter and debris removal from drainage grates, trash racks, and ditch lines shall be a priority.
4. Trash receptacles with lids shall be provided in the Contractor's yard, field trailer areas, and at locations where workers congregate for lunch and break periods.
5. Construction debris and litter from work areas within the construction limits of the project site shall be collected and placed in watertight dumpsters at least weekly regardless of whether the litter was generated by the Contractor, the public, or others. Collected litter and debris shall not be placed in or next to drain inlets, storm water drainage systems or watercourses.
6. Full dumpsters shall be removed from the project site and the contents shall be disposed of, off-site, in an appropriate manner.

7. Litter stored in collection areas and containers shall be handled and disposed of by trash hauling contractors.
8. Construction debris and waste shall be removed from the site every two weeks or as necessary.
9. Stormwater run-off shall be prevented from contacting stored solid waste through the use of berms, dikes, or other temporary diversion structures or through the use of measures to elevate waste from site surfaces.

10. Solid waste storage areas shall be located at least 50 ft from drainage facilities and watercourses and shall not be located in areas prone to flooding or ponding.Except during fair weather, construction and landscaping waste not stored in watertight dumpsters shall be securely covered from wind and rain by covering the waste with tarps, plastic sheeting, or equivalent.
11. Dumpster washout on the project site is not allowed.
12. Notify trash hauling contractors that only watertight dumpsters are acceptable for use on-site.
13. Plan for additional containers during the demolition phase of construction.
14. Plan for more frequent pickup during the demolition phase of construction.
15. Construction waste shall be stored in a designated area. Access to the designated area shall either be well vegetated ground, a concrete or asphalt road or drive, or a gravel construction entrance, to avoid mud tracking by trash hauling contractors.
16. Segregate potentially hazardous waste from non-hazardous construction site waste.
17. Keep the site clean of litter debris.
18. Make sure that toxic liquid wastes (e.g., used oils, solvents, and paints) and chemicals (e.g., acids, pesticides, additives, curing compounds) are not disposed of in dumpsters designated for construction debris.
19. For disposal of hazardous waste, see BMP CN-106: Hazardous Waste Management. Have hazardous waste hauled to an appropriate disposal and/or recycling facility.
20. Salvage or recycle useful vegetation debris, packaging and/or surplus building materials when practical. For example, trees and shrubs from land clearing can be converted into wood chips, then used as mulch on graded areas. Wood pallets, cardboard boxes, and construction scraps can also be recycled.
21. Prohibit littering by employees, subcontractors, and visitors.
22. Wherever possible, minimize production of solid waste materials.

REFERENCE

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

BMP CN – 106
Material Management -
Hazardous Waste Management

DESCRIPTION

These are procedures and practices to minimize or eliminate the discharge of pollutants from construction site hazardous waste to the storm drain systems or to watercourses.

This best management practice (BMP) applies to all construction projects.

Hazardous waste management practices are implemented on construction projects that generate waste from the use of:

- Petroleum Products,
- Asphalt Products,
- Concrete Curing Compounds,
- Pesticides,
- Acids,
- Paints,
- Stains,
- Solvents,
- Wood Preservatives,
- Roofing Tar, or
- Any materials deemed a hazardous waste in 40 CFR Parts 110, 117, 261, or 302.

DESIGN CRITERIA

<u>Storage Procedures</u>

1. Wastes shall be stored in sealed containers constructed of a suitable material and shall be labeled as required by 49 CFR Parts 172,173, 178, and 179.
2. All hazardous waste shall be stored, transported, and disposed as required in 49 CFR 261-263.
3. Waste containers shall be stored in temporary containment facilities that shall comply with the following requirements:
   - Temporary containment facility shall provide for a spill containment volume able to contain precipitation from a 24-hour, 25 year storm event, plus the greater of 10% of the aggregate volume of all containers or 100% of the capacity of the largest tank within its boundary, whichever is greater.
   - Temporary containment facility shall be impervious to the materials stored there for a minimum contact time of 72 hours.
   - Temporary containment facilities shall be maintained free of accumulated rainwater and spills. In the event of spills or leaks accumulated rainwater and spills shall be placed into drums after each rainfall. These liquids shall be handled as a hazardous waste unless testing determines them to be non-

hazardous. Non-hazardous liquids shall be sent to a disposal site approved by all appropriate government authorities to accept the waste.

- Sufficient separation shall be provided between stored containers to allow for spill cleanup and emergency response access.
- Incompatible materials, such as chlorine and ammonia, shall not be stored in the same temporary containment facility. Throughout the rainy season, temporary containment facilities shall be covered during non-working days, and prior to rain events. Covered facilities may include use of plastic tarps for small facilities or constructed roofs with overhangs. A storage facility having a solid cover and sides is preferred to a temporary tarp. Storage facilities shall be equipped with adequate ventilation.

4. Drums shall not be overfilled and wastes shall not be mixed.
5. Unless watertight, containers of dry waste shall be stored on pallets.
6. Paint brushes and equipment for water and oil based paints shall be cleaned within a contained area and shall not be allowed to contaminate site soils, watercourses or drainage systems. Waste paints, thinners, solvents, residues, and sludge that cannot be recycled or reused shall be disposed of as hazardous waste. When thoroughly dry, latex paint and paint cans, used brushes, rags, absorbent materials, and drop cloths shall be disposed of as solid waste.
7. Ensure that adequate hazardous waste storage volume is available.
8. Ensure that hazardous waste collection containers are conveniently located.
9. Designate hazardous waste storage areas on site away from storm drains or watercourses and away from moving vehicles and equipment to prevent accidental spills.
10. Minimize production or generation of hazardous materials and hazardous waste on the job site.
11. Use containment berms in fueling and maintenance areas and where the potential for spills is high.
12. Segregate potentially hazardous waste from non-hazardous construction site debris.
13. Keep liquid or semi-liquid hazardous waste in appropriate containers (closed drums or similar) and under cover.
14. Clearly label all hazardous waste containers with the waste being stored and the date of accumulation.
15. Place hazardous waste containers in secondary containment.
16. Do not allow potentially hazardous waste materials to accumulate on the ground.
17. Do not mix wastes.

Disposal Procedures

1. Waste shall be removed from the site within 90 days of being generated.
2. Waste shall be disposed of by a licensed hazardous waste transporter at an authorized and licensed disposal facility or recycling facility utilizing properly completed Uniform Hazardous Waste Manifest forms.

3. A certified laboratory using methods approved by all state and federal authorities shall analyze a representative sample of the waste and classify it to determine the appropriate disposal facility.
4. Make sure that toxic liquid wastes (e.g., used oils, solvents, and paints) and chemicals (e.g., acids, pesticides, additives, curing compounds) are not disposed of in dumpsters designated for solid waste construction debris.
5. Properly dispose of rainwater in secondary containment that may have mixed with hazardous waste.
6. Recycle any useful material such as used oil or water-based paint when practical.

Maintenance and Inspection

1. A foreman and/or construction supervisor shall monitor on-site hazardous waste storage and disposal procedures.
2. Waste storage areas shall be kept clean, well organized, and equipped with ample clean-up supplies as appropriate for the materials being stored. Storage areas shall be inspected in conformance with the provisions in the contract documents.
3. Perimeter controls, containment structures, covers, and liners shall be repaired or replaced as needed to maintain proper function.
4. Hazardous spills shall be cleaned up and reported in conformance with the applicable Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) and the instructions posted at the project site.
5. The National Response Center, at (800) 424-8802, shall be notified of spills of Federal reportable quantities in conformance with the requirements in 40 CFR parts 110, 117, and 302.
6. Copy of the hazardous waste manifests shall be provided to the Owner.

REFERENCE

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 107
Filtration / Settling - Perimeter Sediment Control –
Silt Fence

APPLICATION

A **silt fence** is a temporary barrier of entrenched geotextile fabric stretched across and attached to supporting posts and installed on the contour to intercept and treat sediment-laden storm water runoff from **small**, unvegetated drainage areas. Its purpose is to trap sediment from small, disturbed areas by reducing the velocity of sheet flow. Generally, silt fences capture sediment by ponding water to allow deposition, not by filtration. However, specific characteristics of the fabric may allow for higher permeability of water and additionally create some filtering capability.

Lake County recognizes two applications for silt fence: projects with a construction duration of less than or equal to 6 months and project construction duration over 6 months. The fence for the 6 month or less project duration is considered a Type "A" fence and the fence for project duration greater than 6 months is considered Type "B" silt fence. If a project exceeds 6 months with Type A fence in place, Type B fence shall be installed.

DESCRIPTION

Type A -– Woven or non-woven geotextile fabric meeting the specifications in Table 1

Type B- The belted silt retention fence, when installed correctly, produces a retention fence with accepted filtering capabilities and strength.

The fabric used is a **spunbond polyester** material with a fiberglass scrim or net sandwiched in between the layers. With this process, the fabric and the screen become one product. Meshing the support system with the fabric eliminates the problems of traditionally supported fence where the fabric separates from the supporting wire.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

The technical report shall include a delineation of the upstream area served by the proposed silt fence and state the anticipated duration of the project.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items should appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The location of all proposed silt fencing must be delineated with an appropriate symbol shown in the legend.

2. The specifications should be included on the detail sheets of the SWPPP.

3. Installation instructions must be included on the detail sheets of the SWPPP plan(s).
4. An inspection schedule which includes silt fence inspection must be included in the SWPPP.

INSTALLATION

The silt fence shall be attached to hardwood stakes with hardwood laths and secured with five 1- 1/2" staples. Hardwood stakes shall be a maximum 6' on center. The bottom 12" of fabric shall be left unsecured to allow for entrenchment. All ends and joints should include wrapped joints at the stakes. Treated stakes are recommended if available.

A 6" deep trench along proposed fence line shall be created. Drive the stakes into the trench 12" or until secure. Be sure to stretch fabric taut when driving stakes. Stakes must be installed on the downhill or downstream side of fence. Drape loose end of geotextile into trench, then backfill and compact soil on both sides.

All silt fences shall have the date of installation marked every 100 ft with weatherproof marker and large lettering that may be seen from a distance of 20 ft.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect within 24 hours of a rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- If fence fabric tears, starts to decompose, or in any way becomes ineffective, replace the affected portion immediately. *Note:* **All repairs should meet specifications as outlined by the manufacturer. However, taping shall not be considered an acceptable repair method in any situation.**
- Remove deposited sediment when it is causing the filter fabric to bulge or when it reaches one-half the height of the fence at its lowest point. When contributing drainage area has been stabilized, remove the fence and sediment deposits, grade the site to blend with the surrounding area, and stabilize.

SPECIFICATIONS

The following Table lists the minimum specifications for each type of silt fence.

Table 1 – Silt Fence / Geotextile Properties

	Property					
	Flow Rate (max, gpm/ft^2)	**UV Resistance (%@500 hrs)**	**Grab Tensile Strength (lb)**	**Apparent Opening Size (AOS) (US Sieve)**	**Staking Distance (Max., ft)**	**Minimum Height above Ground (ft)**
ASTM Standard	D-4491	D-4355	D-4632	D-4751	N/A	N/A
Type A	50	60	100	30	4	2
Type B	200	80	250	60	6	2

LIMITATIONS

- Limited to one-quarter acre per 100 linear feet of fence
- Further restricted by slope steepness (see Table 2 below)

Table 2 – Silt Fence Slope Restrictions for Both Type A and B Fence

Percent Slope		Maximum Distance
< 2%	< 50:1	100 feet
2% – 5%	50:1 to 20:1	75 feet
5% – 10%	20:1 to 10:1	Provide surface stabilization
10% – 20%	10:1 to 5:1	Provide surface stabilization
> 20%	> 5:1	Provide surface stabilization

- Fence should be installed parallel to the slope contour
- Minimum of 10 feet beyond the toe of the slope to provide a broad, shallow sediment pool. This includes fencing around soil stockpiles.

CN 107
Filtration / Settling - Perimeter Sediment Control –
Silt Fence

- **May NOT be used for concentrated or channel flow**.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 108
Surface Stabilization - Erosion Control Blanket

APPLICATION

An **erosion control blanket** is a biodegradable, organic or synthetic mulch incorporated with a biodegradable, photodegradable, or permanent polypropylene, natural fiber, or similar netting material. It is an alternative to mulch and normally used on slopes and in concentrated flow channels. It is used to prevent erosion by protecting the soil from rainfall impact, overland water flow, concentrated runoff, or wind, to provide temporary surface stabilization, to anchor mulch in critical areas, including slopes and concentrated flow conveying systems, to reduce soil crusting and to conserve soil moisture and increase seed germination and seedling growth.

DESCRIPTION

Blankets material generally consists of organic (straw, excelsior, woven paper, coconut fiber, etc.) or synthetic mulch incorporated with a polypropylene, natural fiber or similar netting material. The netting may be biodegradable or photodegradable and biodegradable netting should be used whenever possible in areas that will be mowed. *Note:* ***Some erosion control blanket nettings may pose a threat to certain species of wildlife if they become entangled in the netting matrix***. Staples, pins or stakes shall be used to prevent movement or displacement of blanket. (Follow manufacturer's recommendations for specific applications.)

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. The TIR shall include documentation / calculations demonstrating the shear stress for the design storm is at or below the maximum shear stress allowed by the manufacturer for the specific blanket proposed for use in concentrated flow locations. Manufacturer's software may be used to calculate shear stress with runoff estimates provided by the design engineer.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items should appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The specific manufacturer's model or blanket type(s).
2. The proposed locations to be blanketed, preferably by cross-hatching.
3. Detailed installation procedures including staple pattern for each model and application area (e.g. slopes, channels, etc.).
4. An inspection checklist including date and inspector name.

INSTALLATION

The typical installation procedure is as follows:

1. Select the type and weight of erosion control blanket to fit the site conditions (e.g., slope, channel, flow velocity) per the manufacturer's specifications.

2. Prepare the seedbed, add soil amendments, and permanently seed the area immediately following seedbed preparation.

3. Lay erosion control blankets on the seeded area so that they are in continuous contact with the soil with each up-slope or up-stream blanket overlapping the down-slope or down-stream blanket by at least eight inches, or follow manufacturer's recommendations.

4. Tuck the uppermost edge of the upper blankets into a check slot (slit trench), backfill with soil and tamp down. In certain applications, the manufacturer may require additional check slots at specific locations down slope from the uppermost edge of the upper blankets.

5. Anchor the blankets in place by driving staples, pins, or stakes through the blanket and into the underlying soil. Follow an anchoring pattern appropriate for the site conditions and as recommended by the manufacturer.

6. For specific installation instructions for each model see the manufacturer's data.

MAINTENANCE

The general maintenance requirements to be addressed in the SWPPP should include:

- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- Check for erosion or displacement of the blanket. If any area shows erosion, pull back that portion of the blanket covering the eroded area, add soil and tamp, reseed the area, replace and staple the blanket.
- See manufacturer's data for specific maintenance instructions.

SPECIFICATIONS

Erosion control blankets shall meet the following specifications based on the installation time during the calendar year;

Blankets Installed from March through September		
Property	Test Method	Value
Thickness	ASTM D6525	0.30 in Min
Tensile Strength - MD	ASTM D6818	50 lbs / ft min
Elongation - MD	ASTM D6818	30% Max
Tensile Strength - TD	ASTM D6818	50 lbs / ft min
Elongation - TD	ASTM D6818	30% Max
Functional Longevity	Field Observation	6 Months

Blankets Installated from October through February		
Property	Test Method	Value
Thickness	ASTM D6525	0.30 in Min
Tensile Strength - MD	ASTM D6818	50 lbs / ft min
Elongation - MD	ASTM D6818	30% Max
Tensile Strength - TD	ASTM D6818	50 lbs / ft min
Elongation - TD	ASTM D6818	30% Max
Functional Longevity	Field Observation	12 Months

LIMITATIONS

- Each application must not exceed the maximum shear stress created by water flow specified by the manufacturer when used in concentrated flow areas.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 109
Surface Stabilization - Turf Reinforcement Mat

APPLICATION

A **turf reinforcement mat (TRM)** is a three-dimensional matrix typically used in channel applications or on slopes to reinforce plant rooting systems and the underlying soil material. It may be buried under the surface in contrast to erosion control blankets. It is used to provide reinforcement to vegetation in areas of *concentrated flow* or *steep slopes* where other types of stabilization, such as riprap, are not feasible or desired, to provide surface stabilization and to provide reinforcement for plant roots as vegetation is being established. The material of construction is generally stabilized as compared to an erosion control blanket and is frequently utilized as a "permanent" application.

DESCRIPTION

Turf reinforcement mat (typically consists of a three-dimensional matrix of polypropylene, nylon, or other material) and is commonly anchored using six to 12-inch staples, pins, or stakes.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. The TIR shall include documentation and calculations demonstrating the shear stress for the design storm is at or below the maximum shear stress allowed by the manufacturer for the specific blanket proposed. TRMs should be used in concentrated flow locations where other methods are not feasible or desired. Manufacturer's software may be used with runoff estimates provided by the design engineer.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items should appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets:

1. The specific manufacturer's model or mat type(s).

2. The proposed locations to be reinforced, preferably shown by cross-hatching.

3. Detailed installation procedures including staple pattern.

4. Inspection schedule including the TRM.

INSTALLATION

1. Select a turf reinforcement mat appropriate for the site conditions (e.g., slope, channel, flow velocity) per the manufacturer's specifications.

2. Grade and prepare the soil foundation for mat installation.

3. Install the mat according to the manufacturer's instructions, including burying the edges in check slots or slit trenches.

4. Anchor the mat in place by driving staples, pins, or stakes through the mat and into the underlying soil. Follow an anchoring pattern appropriate for the site conditions and as recommended by the manufacturer.

5. Backfill the mat with topsoil, filling to the top of the mat.

6. Seed the area after the mat has been installed and backfilled with soil.

7. Install erosion control blankets over the seeded turf reinforcement mat to stabilize the surface.

8. See manufacturer's instructions for specific installation instructions for the proposed model on the plans to be used.

Note: **Some products may not require backfill of topsoil or the application of erosion control blankets. Consult manufacturer's literature for proper installation guidance.**

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- Check for erosion or displacement/exposure of the mat.
- If a specific area shows erosion, add soil and restabilize.
- Inspect after surface is stabilized and especially before mowing.
- See manufacturer's data for additional maintenance requirements for the specific model proposed on the plans.

SPECIFICATIONS

TRMs must meet the following minimum specifications:

CN 109
Surface Stabilization - Turf Reinforcement Mat

TRM Minimum Specifications		
Property	Test Method	Value
Resiliency	ASTM D6524	80% minimum
Tensile Strength - MD	ASTM D6818	200 lbs / ft min
Elongation - MD	ASTM D6818	40% Max
Tensile Strength - TD	ASTM D6818	175lbs / ft min
Elongation - TD	ASTM D6818	40% Max
Minimum Permissible Unvegetated Shear Stress	Large Scale	2.5 lbs / ft^2
Minimum Unvegetated Velocity	-	4 ft/ s
UV Resistance @ 1000 hrs	ASTM D4355	80%
Minimum Bench Scale Shear Resistance	ECTC Method 4	4 lbs / ft^2

LIMITATIONS

Each application must not exceed the maximum shear stress created by water flow specified by the manufacturer when used in concentrated flow areas.
The material of construction should have an appropriate life expectancy for the application. Frequently, a turf reinforcement mat will be considered permanent and provide reinforcement of plant rooting.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 110
Filtration / Settling - Check Dams –
Manufactured Temporary Permeable Berms

APPLICATION

Check dams are a series of runoff control structures, consisting of geotextile fabric and an obstruction such as a berm, placed across drainage channels to slow storm water runoff and dissipate energy. This measure may also provide limited effectiveness as a sediment control measure.

Check dams are commonly used (a) in channels that are eroding, but where permanent stabilization is impractical due to their short period of usefulness, and (b) in eroding channels where construction delays or weather conditions prevent timely installation of erosion-resistant linings.

DESCRIPTION

A manufactured permeable berm (MPB) is a permeable ditch berm designed for erosion and sediment control. The berm may be constructed of a durable UV stabilized HDPE and manufactured using a fully automated process to ensure the highest quality and consistency. MPBs are proven effective for erosion and sediment control. By acting as a dissipater, MPBs reduce flow velocities, and provides a smoother, less damaging release of water minimizing the problem of downstream sediment. Compared to straw bales and other devices, MPBs are more durable, delivering superior results.

The MPB shall be used in conjunction with a geotextile or erosion control blanket to prevent under- or side-cutting. The erosion control blanket meet the requirements set forth previously in this manual. .

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. The frequency or spacing of the MPB shall be documented in the TIR. The frequency or spacing is based on the velocity and slope of the swale or channel. See manufacturer's information of specific requirements.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. Location of all proposed MPBs clearly labeled.

2. Detailed installation procedures. These details should include overlap distance, anchoring, etc.

INSTALLATION

See manufacturer's installation requirements.

MAINTENANCE

The following items must be addressed in the SWPPP:

- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- If significant erosion occurs between dams, install an erosion-resistant liner in that portion of the channel.
- Remove accumulated sediment when it reaches one-half the height of the dam to maintain channel capacity, allow drainage through the dam, and prevent large flow from displacing sediment.
- When dams are no longer needed, remove and stabilize the channel, using an erosion-resistant lining if necessary.
- Similar to silt fence and bales, silt deposited behind the MPB must be removed periodically to maintain the permeability and, therefore, the performance of the MPB. Allowing excessive sediment to build behind the berm will create a non-porous check structure. As water flows over the plugged berm, the impact of the water on the downstream side of the terrace will promote the dislodgment and transportation of sediment, leading to failure of the system**.**
- See manufacturer's information for additional specific maintenance requirements.

SPECIFICATIONS

Manufactured Temporary Berm Minimum Specifications		
Property	Test Method	Value
Flow rate	ASTM 4491	50 gpm/ ft^2 min
Apparent Opening Size (AOS)	ASTM D4751	0.600 mm (30 US Sieve)
UV Resistance	ASTM D4355	70% Strength Retained @ 500 hrs

LIMITATIONS

- The channel geometry must be linear to create continuous contact between the soil surface and the bottom of the MPB i.e. there must be no gaps between the soil surface and the berm.

- Erosion control blankets must be used in conjunction with the berm.

- Maximum channel slope = 38%
- Maximum MPB spacing (ft) = height of MPB (ft) / channel slope (ft/ft).
- Berms must be secured with pins or staples per manufacturer's requirements.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 111
Filtration / Settling –
Degradable Silt Filtration Logs / Rolls

APPLICATION

Sediment laden sheet flow from graded, sloped areas prior to establishment of vegetation such as behind curb areas must be addressed as part of a comprehensive SWPPP. Unprotected topsoil, particularly on sloping areas, is vulnerable to significant erosion and sediment control problems. Erosion and runoff can significantly impact disturbed sites that may not be ready for permanent erosion control measures or permanent measures have not yet been established. Filtration logs / rolls may be used as an alternate to silt fence.

DESCRIPTION

Degradable filtration logs consists of a mixture of coconut fiber and weed-free straw reinforced with a 100% biodegradable netting, and can provides more effective sediment control than straw bales and straw wattles. Rolled from edge to edge, the multiple layers of netting formed from rolling the sediment create a temporary, water-permeable structure that offers soil interception, filtration, sediment control, and containment properties. Degradable filtration rolls are constructed from 100% biodegradable components and designed to remain intact for 2-3 years. A fiber matrix consisting of 50% agricultural straw and 50% coconut fiber is applied at a rate of 1.75 lbs/yd2 (measured in an unrolled state). This dense fiber matrix is sewn to a single leno woven biodegradable net along with a two foot apron section which uses a leno woven top net extending along one side for the length of the roll.

Sediment laden runoff is slowed as it flows through the degradable log or roll and sediment is deposited within the roll as well as upslope of the roll. The short apron is stapled down in the same way as an erosion control blanket and acts to prevent erosion from water that may over-top the filtration roll and cascade down the other side

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. A discussion of the maximum spacing per the manufacturer's recommendation between rolls on slopes should be included in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The location of all degradable filtration logs / rolls clearly defined and labeled.

2. Installation details including the required anchoring trench and anchor spacing.

3. Spacing of the degradable filtration log / roll on slopes should be provided per manufacturer's specifications. The required spacing must be clearly labeled on

the plans.

4. Inspection schedule and checklist should be included on the SWPPP plan sheets.

INSTALLATION

See manufacturer's installation instructions.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect within 24 hours of a rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- Check anchoring a trench depth.
- Remove accumulated sediment when it reaches one-quarter the height of the degradable filtration roll**.**
- Repair eroded and damaged areas.
- If ponding becomes excessive, ridges should be removed and reconstructed.
- Inspect to ensure that the ridge is holding its shape and producing adequate flow.

SPECIFICATIONS

Degradable Filtration Log / Roll Minimum Specifications		
Property	Test Method	Value
Matrix	N/A	70% Straw Fiber (1.225 lbs / sq yd and 30% coconut fiber (0.525 lbs / sq yd)
Netting	N/A	Leno woven 100% biodegradable natural organic fiber
Thread	N/A	Biodegradable

LIMITATIONS

- Spacing on slopes must not exceed manufacturer's recommendations.
- Total upstream area should not produce over-topping condition for 2-year storm.

REFERENCES

CN 111
Filtration / Settling –
Degradable Silt Filtration Logs / Rolls

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 112
Inlet Protection –
Catchbasin Inserts

APPLICATION

Catchbasin inserts are structures designed to inside a standard catchbasin and prevent sediment or other undesirable materials from entering the storm sewer. Inlet protection measures should not be the only level of sediment control. It is not the intent of these measures to accommodate or be effective where sediment loading is high. It is important that appropriate sediment control measures are installed in the drainage area above the storm sewer system to reduce excessive sediment loading. The drop inlet protection measures are designed to reduce the amount of sediment entering a storm sewer system. It is extremely important to note that these measures require intensive maintenance and require frequent monitoring, cleanout, repair and/or replacement.

Catchbasin inserts may be used where the roadway needs to be kept clear of obstructions.

DESCRIPTION

The catch basin insert assemblies consist of a rigid steel frame with a replaceable geotextile fabric bag attached with a steel band and locking cap that is suspended from the frame. The structure inlet filter assembly is installed under the grate on the lip of the drainage structure frame with the fabric bag hanging down into the drainage structure.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. The proposed water quality treatment rate to each catch basin must be provided per the Lake County Stormwater Technical Standards when catch basin inserts are to be used as a post-construction water quality practice.
2. The maximum treatment flow rate of the proposed catch basin insert must be provided (as approved by the Lake County Stormwater Products Review Committee).

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The location of each insert clearly labeled.

2. A detail drawing of each insert type must be provided. One drawing for each insert with differing dimensions.

3. An inspection checklist should be included on the plans.

INSTALLATION

See manufacturer's installation procedures.

CN 112
Inlet Protection –
Catchbasin Inserts

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect after each rainfall event and remove sediment / debris as needed.
- Replace bag every six (6) months
- Replace bag after any oil, gasoline or solvent spill.
- Replace bag if there is a hole in the fabric.

SPECIFICATIONS

See below for specifications.

Catch Basin Insert Minimum Specifications		
Property	Test Method	Value
Rigid Steel Frame	ASTM A36	N/A
Geotextile Material	-	Polypropylene with a weight of 4 oz / yd^2 and polyester mesh reinforcement
Sediment Volume	-	2 cu ft, min
Geotextile Fabric Flow Rate	-	145 gpm / ft^2

LIMITATIONS

- Catchbasin inserts must be used in conjunction with stabilization practices upstream for construction phase applications. This includes surface stabilization practices.

- For post-construction applications, the maximum water quality flow rate as calculated per the Lake Conty Stormwater Technical Standards must not exceed the maximum approved treatment flow rate of the proposed catch basin insert.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 113
Outlet Protection - Permanent Flow Transition Mats for Outlets

APPLICATION

When concentrated runoff is carried through a storm water conveyance system and discharged, it is necessary to provide a stable outlet. Outlet protection measures are designed to prevent scouring at the point of discharge and provide energy dissipation to reduce erosion downstream of the discharge point. Scour is erosion at the outlet area caused by the shear forces in the water - a combination of velocity and the weight of flowing water. Shear is compounded by the increasing velocity of the water as it rapidly expands from the confined pipe out into a channel.

Flow transition mats provide an alternative to riprap and are strongly recommended because of their long-term stability relative to riprap and ease of maintenance.

DESCRIPTION

Transition scour mats are semi-rigid, plastic mats (4 ft X 4 ft X .5 in) combining vegetation with modern polymer material technology to mechanically protect the soil from scour and erosion until the shear forces have dissipated. Transition mats must be used over another erosion management practice cover, typically a turf reinforcement mat (TRM), sod, or combination of the two, for immediate and long term soil loss protection. Once vegetated, the mat is mostly shielded from the sun and undetectable - making it a permanent erosion control practice.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. Peak runoff from the 10-year frequency design event of the water conveyance structure.
2. Copy of the manufacturer's designer checklist, completed.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. Location of the proposed scour mat.
2. Detail of the scour mat.
3. Detailed Installation instructions.
4. Inspection checklist with specific inspection points.

CN 113
Outlet Protection - Permanent Flow Transition Mats for Outlets

INSTALLATION

See manufacturer's installation instructions.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect after each rainfall event during establishment of vegetation. Inspect yearly after vegetation established.
- Repair / revegetate as needed.

SPECIFICATIONS

The proposed transition mat shall meet the following specifications:.

Permanent Transition Mat Specifications		
Property	Test Method	Value (MARV)
Tensile Strength	ASTM 4595 (MD/TD)	2600 lb/ft
Percent open Area	Calculated	50% min
UV Stability	ASTM D4355	90% Strength Retained @ 1000 hrs
Velocity (Minimum, unvegetated)	ASTM D6460 (Flume Testing)	15 ft/s
Shear (Minimum, unvegetated)	ASTM D6460 (Flume Testing)	12 lb/ft^2

LIMITATIONS

- Must be used in conjunction with other erosion practices such as sod or a turf reinforcing mat.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 114
Site Access Control Practices –
Manufactured Ingress / Egress Mats

APPLICATION

A temporary construction ingress/egress pad is a sediment control measure, consisting of a stabilized pad used at any point where construction traffic will be traversing between a small construction site and the adjoining public right-of-way or street. The pad may consist of aggregate with geotextile underlayment or a portable manufactured system. The ingress / egress pad prevents movement of soil from the site by equipment tires. A portable manufactured system is recommended for single lots. Note: Each proposed construction entrance must include access control and the total number of construction entrances should be minimized.

Ingress / egress mats are a REQUIRED alternative to gravel entrances. The Lake County Surveyor's Office has the authority to waive this requirement for individual lots containing a single family residence.

DESCRIPTION

Ingress / egress mats shall consists of pocketed, double-wall, high-strength fabric with high tensile reinforcing ribs confined within each sleeve which allows for easy deployment and amazing structural stability. Mats connect together to form custom sizes. Ground pressure from vehicle tires is reduced up to 40x causing minimal ground disturbance.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. A detail of the ingress / egress mat including anchoring / joining connections.
2. The location(s) of the proposed ingress / egress mat
3. The manufacturer's installation procedure.

INSTALLATION

See manufacturer's installation procedures.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect daily and remove built-up debris as necessary.
- Inspect for breaks or tears in the material. Repair or replace as required.

CN 114
Site Access Control Practices –
Manufactured Ingress / Egress Mats

SPECIFICATIONS

Property	**Test**	**Value**
Grab Tensile Strength	ASTM – D4632	3570 N (802.6 lbf)
Apparent Breaking Elongation	ASTM – D4632	25 / 18 %
Puncture Resistance	ASTM – D4833	1665 N (374.3 lbf)
Mullen Burst	ASTM – D3786	3151 kpa (456.88 psi)
Trapezoidal Tearing Strength	ASTM – D4533	2700 N (607 lbf)
Apparent opening Size	ASTM – D4751	0.212 mm (70 US Sieve)
Constant Head permitivity	ASTM – D4491	821 L/min/m^2 (20.16 g/min/ft^2)
Wide Width Tensile	ASTM – D4595	122.5 kg/ cm (685.7 lbs. in)

LIMITATIONS

- Minimum length of construction entrance should be 50 feet, minimum width should be 12 feet.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

`.

CN 115
Surface Stabilization –
Chemical Dust Control Treatments

APPLICATION

Dust control is a construction site management measure which the Lake County Surveyor's Office may require to be used to control the blowing and movement of dust on construction sites and associated land-disturbing activities when suspension of dust becomes excessive. Dust control measures may consist of either chemical, structural, or mechanical measures.

DESCRIPTION

Dust control treatment material is designed to agglomerate very fine particulate and retain the agglomerate for up to 1-4 days in traffic areas (1-3 months on non-traffic areas). This mechanism has been shown to reduce airborne dust from haul roads, waste dumps, tailings piles, and open areas on construction sites.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The areas to be treated with the dust control compound should be clearly delineated on the plans, preferably with cross-hatching.

2. The monitoring of dust should be addressed in the SWPPP. At a minimum, inspection daily should be required and included in a checklist.

3. The specific product proposed for use must be included on the SWPPP plan sheets.

4. The mixing proportions should be clearly stated on the SWPPP.

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

See manufacturer's application directions.

MAINTENANCE

- Re-apply as needed to control suspended dust, 1 to 4 days for traffic areas.

SPECIFICATIONS

See for manufacturer's specifications.

CN 115
Surface Stabilization –
Chemical Dust Control Treatments

LIMITATIONS

- May be used for temporary stabilization only. Permanent measures must be implemented for continued use of roadways etc.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 116
Materials Management -
Manufactured Concrete Washout Basins

APPLICATION

Concrete washout areas are designated locations within a construction site that are either a prefabricated unit or a designed measure that is constructed to contain concrete washout. Concrete washout systems are typically used to contain washout water when chutes and hoppers are rinsed following delivery.

Manufactured concrete washout basins are an alternative to constructed washout pits.

DESCRIPTION

Concrete washout devices are comprised of a metal frame specially designed to hold a geotextile basket. The basket is made of a high-flow geotextile allowing water to flow directly through the basket, leaving all sediment and debris behind. The high-flow geotextile is made up of polypropylene filaments, woven to form a stable and durable network such that the filaments retain their relative position. The geotextile is nonbiodegradable and resistant to most soil chemicals, acids, and alkali with a pH range of 3 – 12.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The location of each washout basin clearly delineated and labeled.
2. Washout basins shall NOT be located within 50 ft of wetlands, storm sewer inlets or sensitive areas.
3. A detail of the concrete washout basin.
4. A detail of "Concrete Washout" signage and the location(s) on the plans sheet(s).
5. Installation instructions.
6. Maintenance procedures including a checklist.

INSTALLATION

See manufacturer's installation procedures.

CN 116
Materials Management -
Manufactured Concrete Washout Basins

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect after each use and replace basket when full. Dispose of properly.

SPECIFICATIONS

See manufacturer's specifications.

LIMITATIONS

- Basket must be inspected and replaced as use warrants.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information as well as a sample sequence schedule.

.

CN 117
Filtration / Settling –
Silt Tubes

APPLICATION

Sediment laden sheet flow from graded, sloped areas prior to establishment of vegetation such as behind curbs, along lot borders and around soil storage piles must be addressed as part of a comprehensive SWPPP. Unprotected topsoil, particularly on sloping areas, is vulnerable to significant erosion and sediment control problems. Erosion and runoff can significantly impact disturbed sites that may not be ready for permanent erosion control measures or permanent measures have not yet been established such as seeding and mulching.

Silt tubes are an alternative practice to the use of silt fence.

DESCRIPTION

Silt tubes are geotextile tubes filled with natural, biodegradable filter media. Silt tubes may be used where low-velocity sheet flow carrying sediment occurs. The tubes may not be used in swales and channels or where shallow concentrated flow occurs.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets;

- Location of all silt tubes
- Installation instructions
- .Inspection procedures and checklist

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

See manufacturer's application directions. Note: Silt tubes must be overlapped at end sections by a minimum of 1 ft.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect weekly and after each rainfall event
- Do not allow vehicular traffic to cross silt tubes. Replace when driven over.
- Remove sediment when the height reaches 1/3 of tube.

SPECIFICATIONS

CN 117
Filtration / Settling –
Silt Tubes

Silt Tube Specifications		
Property	Test Method	Value
Media	N/A	100% Hardwood
Material Size (Grind)	N/A	70% 1.5 to 2 inches min 30% Fines max
Geotextile (Tubular Knit)		
Material	-	Polypropylene Multi-filament
Maximum Opening	-	1 x 1 mm
UV Resistance	ASTM D4355	>85% @ 500 Hrs
Life Expectancy	-	18-24 Mos
Specific Gravity	-	0.91 g
Static Puncture	ASTM D6241	2400 N

LIMITATIONS

- Degradable silt tubes have a minimum life of 18-24 monthsc
- Degradable silt tubes must be replaced if driven over.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.
2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 118
Filtration / Settling –
Floculation Polymers

APPLICATION

Fine particles and colloidal clays can remain suspended in water or runoff for long periods of time. Sometimes the time in suspension is longer than the time provided by settling basins or other water quality practices. Settling of these finer particles can be accelerated by use if a polymer. The polymer is introduced at a point upstream to help provide adequate mixing without shear.

Floculation polymers are used when fine suspended particles or other specific pollutants are not adequately address by other practices. The Lake County Surveyor's Office has the discretion to require flocculation polymers on a case-by-case basis.

DESCRIPTION

Floculating polymers are a group of soil specific tailored polymers that contains blends of water treatment components and polyacrylamide co-polymer for water clarification and erosion control. They reduce and prevent fine particles and colloidal clays from suspension in stormwater. There are more multiple types of designed for varying soil and water conditions. Contact your local distributor for testing and site-specific application information.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. Results of testing and site-specific application recommendations by the manufacturer should be provided in the TIR or in writing to the LCSO MS4 Section. The report must provide a recommended application method and dosing rate.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The specific floculation system to be used.

2. The specific procedure for introducing and mixing the floculant including a recommended application method and dosing rate. This should include all construction parameters such as length and width of a mixing channel

3. Maintenance guidelines.

INSTALLATION

See manufacturer's installation requirements.

CN 118
Filtration / Settling –
Floculation Polymers

MAINTENANCE

- The floculation polymer delivery system should be inspected and replaced when the polymer has been exhausted.
- See manufacturer's data for additional maintenance requirements of the manufacturer.

SPECIFICATIONS

See the manufacturer's specifications.

LIMITATIONS

- Testing must be performed for each site conditions. The results of the testing must be provided to the LCSO MS4 Department.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 119
Filtration / Settling –
Coir Logs

APPLICATION

Sediment laden sheet flow from graded areas prior to establishment of vegetation such as behind curb areas must be addressed as part of a comprehensive SWPPP. Unprotected topsoil, particularly on sloping areas, is vulnerable to significant erosion and sediment control problems. Erosion and runoff can significantly impact disturbed sites that may not be ready for permanent erosion control measures or permanent measures have not yet been established.

Coir logs are approved for use behind curbs and across construction drives as an alternative to silt fencing. The logs may be re-used as long as the structural integrity of the coir and netting are maintained.

DESCRIPTION

Coir Logs are constructed of interwoven coconut fibers that are bound together with biodegradable or permanent netting. Commercially produced coir logs come in various lengths and diameters. The product needs to be selected specifically for the site.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

1. No requirements.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

1. The location of all proposed coir logs should be delineated on the plans sheets.
2. The specifications should be included on the plans sheets.
3. The installation details should be included on the plan sheets
4. The maintenance guidelines should be included on the plan sheets.

INSTALLATION

1. Install logs behind curbs. Turn the ends of the log barrier up slope such that the point of contact between the ground and the bottom of the log barrier end terminates at a higher elevation than the top of the log barrier at its lowest point.

2. Excavate a trench with a depth and width equal to at least one-fourth the diameter of the log or follow the manufacturer's recommendations. Where applicable, the trench may also be excavated upslope of a curb or sidewalk. Placing the product against the curb or sidewalk will provide additional stability and resistance to surface flow.
3. Construct the log or utilize a pre-manufactured product. For compost use a pneumatic blower or similar device to provide adequate and consistent fill in the log. (Seed or sod may be applied at the time of installation for permanent applications.)
4. Coir Fiber Logs shall be joined end-to-end to create a continuous length. The Polypropylene net exterior shall be laced continuously to the exterior net of the adjacent coir fiber log with 0.125" diameter inter-braided nylon rope in such a manner that there are no gaps between adjacent logs.
5. Hardwood Stakes measuring 2" x 2" x 36" shall be used for securing Coir Fiber Logs. Stakes shall be notched to accept 0.25" inter-braided nylon rope. Notching shall take place after the stakes have been driven into site soils. Rope for securing Coir Logs with stakes shall be 0.25" diameter inter-braided nylon rope. Posts should be spaced no more than five feet apart and driven through the middle of the log. Reference approved construction documents for actual dimensioned location and quantity of Hardwood Stakes. The posts should be driven a minimum of 18 inches deep into the soil. The stake should be flush with the top of the log.
6. Backfill the trench with excavated soil placed against the log barrier to ground level on the down-slope side and to two inches above ground level on the up-slope side of the log barrier. Compact the fill material to keep it in place.

See manufacturer's installation requirements.

MAINTENANCE

- The logs should be inspected weekly and after each rainfall event. Inspection should include if the materials diameter is less than specification and if the outer netting is been degraded or broken.
- Remove accumulated sediment when it reaches one-quarter the height of the log.
- Inspect to ensure that the sock is maintaining its integrity and producing adequate flow.
- Repair eroded and damaged areas.
- If ponding becomes excessive, logs should be removed and either reconstructed or new product installed.
- Reseed, if applicable.
- Remove and dispose of log if necessary.
- See manufacturer for additional maintenance requirements.

CN 119
Filtration / Settling –
Coir Logs

SPECIFICATIONS

See the manufacturer's specifications.

LIMITATIONS

- Limited to one-quarter acre per 100 linear feet of barrier.
- Also limited per the table below.

Table CN-119-1 – Coir Log Application Parameters

Slope		**Maximum Distance Above Log (linear ft) for Minimum Log Diameter (8 inch Log)**
0%-2%	<50:1	125
2%-10%	50:1 to 10:1	100
10%-20%	10:1 to 5:1	75
20%-33%	5:1 to 3:1	25
>33%	>3:1	10

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information as well as a sample sequence schedule.

CN 120

Site Preservation / Protection –

Tree Preservation Plans

APPLICATION

A tree preservation plan (TPP) should be considered for all developing sites with existing trees.

DESCRIPTION

A tree preservation plan examines the proposed development site and identifies existing, healthy trees on the site plan. The building layout is superimposed and only the specific trees that must be removed for the proposed construction are identified. Barriers are created to limit damage to trees that do not need to be removed for the proposed construction.

The TPP should be created by a knowledgeable person, reviewed by builder or developer and construction supervisor. Monitoring of preservation practices should be included in the SWPPP.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear as part of the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets with respect to a tree preservation plan:

1. A separate site plan sheet with the location of all trees on the site shown.
2. Each tree to be removed should be clearly labeled as well as those to remain.
3. Specific practices used to preserve trees should be called out on the TPP. Barriers are strongly recommended. Example practices as well as other guides are provided on the Lake County Surveyor's website (*http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org*).
4. All tree protection areas should be posted
5. An inspection checklist should be provided with items and inspection frequency.

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

See *http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional information.*

MAINTENANCE

- The SWPPP monitoring program should include monitoring of the tree preservation area and by the responsible individual.

SPECIFICATIONS

N/A

LIMITATIONS

- Only healthy trees should be preserved. An arborist should be consulted to establish desirable and healthy species.
- Tree-well preservation strategies are NOT recommended due to the high rate of failure.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 121

Site Preservation / Protection –

Wetland Preservation

APPLICATION

Lake County includes numerous wetland areas. All development areas with wetland areas should include wetland preservation practices.

DESCRIPTION

Wetlands may be regulated by both the US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) and the Indiana Department of Environmental Management (IDEM). Activities within wetlands areas must be permitted by all agencies having jurisdiction.

When wetlands may be within the development boundaries, a wetland delineation should be performed.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- A copy of the wetland delineation must be included in the appendix of the TIR.
- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

- All wetland areas must be clearly delineated on the SWPPP.
- All exclusion zones, fences and signage must be shown on the SWPP plan sheets.
- The specific practices employed to prevent impact on the wetlands must be shown and appropriately.

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

N/A

MAINTENANCE

- Inspection and maintenance of all measures employed to prevent soil from entering wetlands should be included on the inspection checklist.

SPECIFICATIONS

N/A

LIMITATIONS

All runoff must be treated to current federal, state and local standards prior to entry into a wetland.N/A

REFERENCES

1. *The* Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

3. Indiana Department of Environmental Management, http://www.in.gov/idem/4138.htm .

4. US Environmental Protection Agency, http://water.epa.gov/type/wetlands/index.cfm

CN 122

Site Access Control Practices –

Street Cleaning and Sweeping

APPLICATION

Paved roadways used for construction activity such as soil hauling can accumulate dust. This dust can be suspended by tires or wind. Periodic scraping and sweeping to remove accumulated material will prevent movement of soil.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

Removal of large particles and clumps should be done with a bucket. Removal of accumulated dust from roadways can be accomplished by the use of a vacuum truck. Rotary brushes alone are not an acceptable method of dust removal. In addition, the number of ingress / egress points should be minimized to reduce maintenance time.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

- The roadway used by construction equipment should be clearly delineated, preferably by cross—hatching.
- Inspection of the roadway should be included in the inspection checklist.

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

N/A

MAINTENANCE

- Sweeping must be done as needed. The person responsible for the SWPPP should inspect daily during operations impacting the roadway during active construction periods.

SPECIFICATIONS

N/A

LIMITATIONS

- Limited to dusts. Larger particles indicate other measures to prevent migration of soil are needed or in need of maintenance.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 123
Filtration / Settling –
Gravel / Rock Check Dams

APPLICATION

Rock check dams can be employed to reduce erosion in a drainage channel by slowing velocity of flow. Check dams are commonly used (a) in channels / ditches that have bare soil or are eroding, but where permanent stabilization is impractical due to their short period of usefulness, and (b) in eroding channels / ditches where construction delays or weather conditions prevent timely installation of erosion-resistant linings.

An alternative method to reduce erosion in a channel is the use of erosion control blankets (see CN 108).

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

A rock check dam is a series of runoff control structures, consisting of geotextile fabric and aggregate, placed across drainage channels to slow storm water runoff. This measure may also provide limited effectiveness as a sediment control measure.

The rock check dam includes a filter layer on the upstream side, usually to the height of the overflow weir.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- Spacing calculations where multiple check dams are used in series.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets;

- Detail of the check dam including fabric, filter face and dimensions;

- Location of all proposed check dams.

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

1. Lay out the location of the check dam. Check dams should be spaced "head to toe", the elevation of the top of downstream dam at the bottom elevation of the upstream dam.

2. Excavate a cutoff trench into the channel bottom and ditch banks, extending it a minimum of 18 inches beyond the top of the ditch bank.

3. Install and anchor filter fabric in the channel and cutoff trench.

4. Place riprap in the cutoff trench and channel to the lines and dimensions shown in the construction plans. The center of each dam must be at least nine inches lower than the uppermost points of contact between the riprap dam and channel banks.

5. Extend the riprap at least 18 inches beyond the top of the channel banks to keep overflow water from eroding areas adjacent to the channel banks before it re-enters the channel.

6. Place filter medium (INDOT CA No. 5 aggregate) on the up-slope side of the dam. Place filter medium over the entire face of the dam up to the base of the overflow weir notch.

7. Stabilize the channel above the uppermost dam.

8. Install an erosion-resistant lining in the channel below the lowermost dam. The lining should extend a minimum distance of six feet below the dam.

9. Additional sediment storage can be provided by excavating a small sediment trap on the upstream side of the check dam.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- If significant erosion occurs between dams, install an erosion-resistant liner in that portion of the channel.
- Remove accumulated sediment when it reaches one-half the height of the dam to maintain channel capacity, allow drainage through the dam, and prevent large flow from displacing sediment.
- Add riprap and aggregate as needed to maintain design height and cross section of the dams.
- When dams are no longer needed, remove the riprap and aggregate and stabilize the channel, using an erosion-resistant lining if necessary. (Riprap and aggregate from the dam may be removed or utilized to stabilize the channel.).

SPECIFICATIONS

- Geotextile fabric (8 ounce or heavier; nonwoven).

- Indiana Department of Transportation Revetment riprap for dam.
- INDOT CA No. 5 aggregate for use as filter medium (Aggregate must be well-graded).

  Note: INDOT CA No. 8 aggregate is acceptable if No. 5 aggregate is not available. The use of No. 8 aggregate may result in more frequent overtopping of the structure and will increase the frequency of structure maintenance.

LIMITATIONS

- Rock check dams should not be used in streams.
- Maximum of two acres upstream.
- Maximum of 2 foot in height.
- Permitting may be required for waters of the US and / or Indiana.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.
2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 124
Surface Stabilization –
Temporary Seeding

APPLICATION

Temporary seeding is employed to provide vegetative cover where permanent seeding is not desirable or practical. When disturbed earth (area of bare soil) is to be left 14 days or longer, temporary stabilization by seeding shall be used. The temporary cover will reduce erosion from runoff and reduce the potential for wind-born dust.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

Temporary seeding is a method of stabilizing exposed earth with a rapid growing annual grasses. The process begins with soil preparation including testing for amendments, spreading seed, mulching and periodic monitoring to establish cover. Different seed mixtures are used depending on the time of year and ground conditions.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets:

- Temporary seeding mixture chart
- Any required soil amendments.
- Areas to be seeded delineated and labeled
- Seed mixture and specifications
- Seeding installation / application directions

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

Seedbed Preparation

1. Test soil to determine the need for amendments (see CN 126)

Seeding

1. Select a seed species or an appropriate seed mixture and application rate from Table 1.

2. Apply seed uniformly with a drill or cultipacker seeder or by broadcasting. Plant or cover seed to the depth shown in Table 1.

Notes:

1. If drilling or broadcasting the seed, ensure good seed-to-soil contact by firming the seedbed with a roller or cultipacker after completing seeding operations.

2. Daily seeding when the soil is moist is usually most effective.

3. If seeding is done with a hydroseeder, fertilizer and mulch can be applied with the seed in a slurry mixture.

3. Apply mulch and anchor it in place.

MAINTENANCE

- Water to achieve at least 1 inch equivalent of rainfall per week. More often during initial sprouting.
- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- Check for erosion or movement of mulch and repair immediately.
- Monitor for erosion damage and adequate cover (80 percent density); reseed, fertilize, and apply mulch where necessary.
- If nitrogen deficiency is apparent, top-dress fall seeded wheat or rye seeding with 50 pounds per acre of nitrogen in February or March.

SPECIFICATIONS

- **Seed mixtures shall have 80% pure live seed.**

Table 1 - Temporary Seeding Specifications

Seed Species[1]	Rate per Acre	Planting Depth	Optimum Dates[2]
Wheat or Rye	150 lbs.	1 to 1½ inches	Sept. 15 – Oct. 30
Spring Oats	100 lbs.	1 inch	March 1 – April 15
Annual Ryegrass	40 lbs.	¼ inch	March 1 – May 1 Aug. 1 – Sept. 1
Sorghum	35 lbs.	1 to 2 inches	May 1 – July 15

1 Perennial species may be used as a temporary cover, especially if the area to be seeded will remain idle for more than one year (see **Permanent Seeding**).

2 Seeding done outside the optimum seeding dates increases the chances of seeding failure. Dates may be extended or shortened based on the location of the project site within the state.

Notes:
Mulch alone is an acceptable temporary cover and may be used in lieu of temporary seeding, provided that it is appropriately anchored.

A high potential for fertilizer, seed, and mulch to wash exists on steep banks, cuts, and in channels and areas of concentrated flow.

LIMITATIONS

- Weather can limit growth. Dormant seeding may be required.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 125
Surface Stabilization –
Permanent Seeding

APPLICATION

Earth that has been disturbed and has been graded to its final elevation must be stabilized to resist erosive forces.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

Permanent seeding involves the establishment of a permanent vegetative cover to protect soils from erosive forces.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets;

- Areas to be seeded delineated and labeled
- Seed mixture and specifications
- Seeding installation / application directions

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

Site Preparation

1. Check the final grade of the site to confirm positive drainage.

2. Add topsoil or compost mulch to achieve needed depth for establishment of vegetation. (Compost material may be added to improve soil moisture holding capacity, soil friability, and nutrient availability.)

Seedbed Preparation

1. Test soil to determine pH and nutrient levels and apply amendments (see CN126).

Seeding

Optimum seeding dates are March 1 to May 10 and August 10 to September 30. Permanent seeding done between May 10 and August 10 may need to be irrigated. Seeding outside or beyond optimum seeding dates is still possible with the understanding that reseeding or overseeding may be required if adequate surface cover is not achieved. Reseeding or overseeding can be easily accomplished if the soil surface remains well protected with mulch.

1. Select a seeding mixture and rate from Table 1. Select seed mixture based on site conditions, soil pH, intended land use, and expected level of maintenance.

2. Apply seed uniformly with a drill or cultipacker seeder (see Figure 1) or by broadcasting (see Figure 2). Plant or cover the seed to a depth of one-fourth to one-half inch. If drilling or broadcasting the seed, ensure good seed-to-soil contact by firming the seedbed with a roller or cultipacker after completing seeding operations. (If seeding is done with a hydroseeder (see Figure 3), fertilizer and mulch can be applied with the seed in a slurry mixture.)

3. Mulch all seeded areas and use appropriate methods to anchor the mulch in place. Consider using erosion control blankets on sloping areas and conveyance channels.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days until the vegetation is successfully established.
- Characteristics of a successful stand include vigorous dark green or bluishgreen seedlings with a uniform vegetative cover density of 90 percent or more.
- Check for erosion or movement of mulch.
- Repair damaged, bare, gullied, or sparsely vegetated areas and then fertilize, reseed, and apply and anchor mulch.
- If plant cover is sparse or patchy, evaluate the plant materials chosen, soil fertility, moisture condition, and mulch application; repair affected areas either by overseeding or preparing a new seedbed and reseeding. Apply and anchor mulch on the newly seeded areas.
- If vegetation fails to grow, consider soil testing to determine soil pH or nutrient deficiency problems. (Contact your soil and water conservation district or cooperative extension office for assistance.)
- If additional fertilization is needed to get a satisfactory stand, do so according to soil test recommendations.
- Add fertilizer the following growing season. Fertilize according to soil test recommendations.
- Fertilize turf areas annually. Apply fertilizer in a split application. For cool-season grasses, apply one-half of the fertilizer in late spring and one-half in early fall. For warm-season grasses, apply one-third in early spring, one-third in late spring, and the remaining one-third in middle summer.

SPECIFICATIONS

The following tables provide seed mixtures for different applications but are not all inclusive.

Table 1 –
Open Low-Maintenance Areas (remaining idle more than six months)

Seed Mixtures	Rate per Acre Pure Live Seed	Optimum Soil pH
1. Perennial ryegrass- white clover[1]	70 lbs. 2 lbs.	5.6 to 7.0
2. Perennial ryegrass- tall fescue[2]	70 lbs. 50 lbs.	5.6 to 7.0
3. Tall fescue[2]- white clover[1]	70 lbs. 2 lbs.	5.5 to 7.5

Table 2 –
Steep Banks and Cuts, Low-Maintenance Areas (not mowed)

Seed Mixtures	Rate per Acre Pure Live Seed	Optimum Soil pH
1. Smooth brome grass - red clover[1]	35 lbs. 20 lbs	5.5 to 7.0
2. Tall fescue[2] - white clover[1] .	50 lbs. 2 lbs.	5.5 to 7.5
3. Tall fescue[2] - red clover[1]	50 lbs. 20 lbs.	5.5 to 7.5
4. Orchard grass - red clover[1] - white clover[1]	30 lbs. 20 lbs. 2 lbs.	5.6 to 7.0

Table 3 – Lawns and High-Maintenance Areas

Seed Mixtures	Rate per Acre Pure Live Seed	Optimum Soil pH
1. Bluegrass	140 lbs.	5.5 to 7.0
2. Perennial ryegrass (turf type)	60 lbs. 90 lbs.	5.6 to 7.0
3. Tall fescue (turf type)[2] - bluegrass	170 lbs. 30 lbs.	5.6 to 7.5

Table 4 – Channels and Areas of Concentrated Flow **

Seed Mixtures	Rate per Acre Pure Live Seed	Optimum Soil pH
1. Perennial ryegrass - white[1]	150 lbs. 2 lbs.	5.5 to 7.0
2. Kentucky bluegrass - smooth bromegrass - switchgrass - timothy - perennial ryegrass - white clover [2]	20 lbs. 10 lbs. 3 lbs. 4 lbs. 10 lbs. 2 lbs.	5.5 to 7.5
3. Tall fescue[1] - white clover [2]	150 lbs. 2 lbs.	5.5 to 7.5
4. Tall fescue[2] - perennial ryegrass - Kentucky bluegrass	150 lbs. 20 lbs. 20 lbs.	5.5 to 7.5

*** Consult Table 5-1 for grass types and maximum permissible velocities in vegal-lined channels.*

1. For best results: (a) legume seed should be inoculated; (b) seeding mixtures containing legumes should preferably be spring-seeded, although the grass may be fall-seeded and the legume frost-seeded; and (c) if legumes are fall-seeded, do so in early fall.

2. Tall fescue provides little cover for, and may be toxic to some species of wildlife. The Indiana Department of Natural Resources recognizes the need for additional research on alternatives such as buffalograss, orchardgrass, smooth bromegrass, and switchgrass. This research, in conjunction with demonstration areas, should focus on erosion control characteristics, wildlife toxicity, turf durability, and drought resistance.

Notes:

1. An oat or wheat companion or nurse crop may be used with any of the above permanent seeding mixtures, at the following rates:
(a) Spring oats – one-fourth to three-fourths bushel per acre
(b) Wheat – no more than one-half bushel per acre

2. A high potential for fertilizer, seed, and mulch to wash exists on steep banks, cuts, and in channels and areas of concentrated flow.

LIMITATIONS

- Seed only during the growing season.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 126
Surface Stabilization -
Fertilization and Soil Amendments

APPLICATION

Stripping of topsoil removes many existing nutrients and organic materials from a site. Some existing topsoils are not conducive to the growth of plants as well. In order to promote growth and surface stabilization, soils may need to be amended.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

Soil amendments are materials added to soil to alter the properties in order to promote plant growth. Amendments to alter the acidity (pH) such as lime and to alter the carbon, nitrogen and phosphorus levels such as fertilizers are common. Amendments may be added during planting or after plants have been established to replenish nutrients lost by plant growth.

Amendments should only be added after testing to determine the appropriate amounts. Excessive amounts of nutrient can wash off or out of the soil and into waterways where they can have a negative impact.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets;

- All areas where fertilizer and amendments are to be applied must be shown on the SWPP plan sheets.

- Fertilizer Specifications

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

1. Test soil to determine pH and nutrient levels.

2. Apply soil amendments as recommended by the soil test. If testing is not done, apply 400 to 600 pounds per acre of 12-12-12 analysis fertilizer, or equivalent.

3. Work the soil amendments into the upper two to four inches of the soil with a disk or rake operated across the slope.

MAINTENANCE

- If growth of cover is slow, retest and re-apply amendments during the growing season.

SPECIFICATIONS

- Low sulfur, slow release fertilizers must be used.

LIMITATIONS

- Amendments should be applied only as needed to prevent washing out and negative impact downstream.
- Application of fertilizers must be done by a certified applicator as required by state regulatory agencies such as the State Chemist's Office.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 127

Materials Management –

Concrete Washout Basin – Constructed above Ground

APPLICATION

Construction sites where concrete is utilized.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

Concrete washout areas are designated locations within a construction site that are either a prefabricated unit or a designed measure that is constructed to contain concrete washout. Concrete washout systems are typically used to contain washout water when chutes and hoppers are rinsed following delivery.

Concrete washout systems are implemented to reduce the discharge of pollutants that are associated with concrete washout waste through consolidation of solids and retention of liquids. Uncured concrete and associated liquids are highly alkaline which may leach into the soil and contaminate ground water or discharge to a waterbody or wetland which can elevate the pH and be harmful to aquatic life. Performing concrete washout in designated areas and into specifically designed systems reduces the impact concrete washout will have on the environment.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets;

- Location of proposed washout basin(s)
- Cross-section detail showing liner, berm and liner overlap
- Dimensions
- Stable access path
- Assembly instructions

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

- The system design may utilize an earthen berm, straw bales, sandbags, or other acceptable barriers that will maintain its shape and integrity and support the polyethylene lining.

- System designed and built above grade should be a minimum of ten (10) feet wide by ten (10) feet long, but sized to contain all liquid and waste that is expected to be generated between scheduled cleanout periods.

- The size of the containment system may be limited by the size of polyethylene available. The polyethylene lining should be of adequate size to extend over the berm or containment system.

- The system design may utilize an earthen berm, straw bales, sandbags, or other acceptable barriers that will maintain its shape and integrity and support the polyethylene lining.

- Include a minimum four-inch freeboard as part of the design

- Where necessary, provide stable ingress and egress

MAINTENANCE

- Remove accumulated material when full and dry.

SPECIFICATIONS

- Minimum of ten (10) millimeter polyethylene sheeting that is free of holes, tears, and other defects. The sheeting selected should be of an appropriate size to fit the washout system without seams or overlap of the lining.

- Signage stating "Concrete Washout".

- Orange safety fencing or equivalent.

- Straw bales, sandbags (bags should be ultraviolet-stabilized geotextile fabric), soil material, or other appropriate materials that can be used to construct a containment system.

- Metal pins or staples at a minimum of six inches in length, sandbags, or alternative fastener to secure polyethylene lining to the containment system.

- Non-collapsing and non-water holding cover for use during rain events (optional).

- Locate concrete washout systems at least 50 feet from any creeks, wetlands, ditches, karst features, or storm drains/manmade conveyance systems.

LIMITATIONS

- The amount of material is limited by the size of the constructed basin and frequency of cleanout.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 128
Materials Management –
Concrete Washout Basin – Constructed Below Ground

APPLICATION

Construction sites where concrete is utilized.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

Concrete washout areas are designated locations within a construction site that are either a prefabricated unit or a designed measure that is constructed to contain concrete washout. Concrete washout systems are typically used to contain washout water when chutes and hoppers are rinsed following delivery.

Concrete washout systems are implemented to reduce the discharge of pollutants that are associated with concrete washout waste through consolidation of solids and retention of liquids. Uncured concrete and associated liquids are highly alkaline which may leach into the soil and contaminate ground water or discharge to a waterbody or wetland which can elevate the pH and be harmful to aquatic life. Performing concrete washout in designated areas and into specifically designed systems reduces the impact concrete washout will have on the environment.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets;

- Dimensions

  Installation instructions

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

- A washout system installed below grade should be a minimum of ten feet wide by ten feet long, but sized to contain all liquid and waste that is expected to be generated between scheduled cleanout periods. The size of the pit may be limited by the size of polyethylene available. The polyethylene lining should be of adequate size to extend over the entire excavation.

- Include a minimum 12-inch freeboard to reasonably ensure that the structure will not overtop during a rain event.

- Line the pit with ten millimeter polyethylene lining to control seepage.
- The bottom of excavated pit should be above the seasonal high water table.

MAINTENANCE

- Remove accumulated material when full and dry.

SPECIFICATIONS

- Minimum of ten (10) millimeter polyethylene sheeting that is free of holes, tears, and other defects. The sheeting selected should be of an appropriate size to fit the washout system without seams or overlap of the lining.
- Signage, "Concrete Washout".
- Orange safety fencing or equivalent.
- Metal pins or staples at a minimum of six inches in length, sandbags, or alternative fastener to secure polyethylene lining to the ground at the top.
- Non-collapsing and non-water holding cover for use during rain events (optional).
- Locate concrete washout systems at least 50 feet from any creeks, wetlands, ditches, karst features, or storm drains/manmade conveyance systems.

LIMITATIONS

- The amount of material is limited by the size of the constructed basin and frequency of cleanout.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.
2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 129
Surface Stabilization - Diversion Berms

APPLICATION

Developments where there is an off-site watershed draining into the site.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

A diversion is a storm water control measure consisting of a temporary ridge, excavated channel, or combination of a channel and supporting ridge constructed on a predetermined grade across a slope to collect storm water runoff and divert it to a treatment device or stable outlet.

Diversion structures may be temporary or permanent.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

Temporary Diversion:

- The TIR must document the proposed diversion is sized for the 2-yr, 24-hour storm runoff from the entire upstream watershed.
- Time-of-concentration and runoff coefficient / curve number calculations must be provided.
- The upstream basin must be delineated on a contour map with the total area labeled.

Permanent Diversion:

- The TIR must document the proposed diversion is sized for the 100-yr peak storm runoff from the entire upstream watershed.
- Time-of-concentration and runoff coefficient / curve number calculations must be provided.
- The upstream basin must be delineated on a contour map with the total area labeled.
- Velocity calculations documenting the minimum velocity requirements of Chapter 6 are met.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

- The location of all diversion swales clearly delineated.

- Typical cross-section of all diversion swales documenting compliance with the calculations in the TIR including side slopes.
- Surface stabilization methods call-outs (erosion control blanket, sod, etc.)
- Outfall protection
- Installation instructions

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

1. Lay out the diversion by setting grade and alignment to fit site needs and topography, maintaining a stable, positive channel grade towards the outlet.
2. Remove and properly dispose of brush, trees, and other debris from the foundation area.
3. Disk ridge base before placing fill to allow bonding of soil materials.
4. Excavate the channel and fill/shape the diversion ridge to alignment, grade and cross-section shown in the construction plans. Note: **Install subsurface tile drain where a seasonal high water table exists.**
5. Construct the ridge where appropriate in six to eight-inch lifts, compacting each lift as it is placed. Build the diversion ridge higher than design elevation, allowing for 10 percent settlement. (Compaction of the ridge may be achieved by driving wheeled equipment along the ridge as soil lifts are added. The compacted ridge must be at or above design grade at all points, while the channel must be at design grade. Shape the ridge and channel to blend with the surrounding landscape and leave sufficient area along the diversion to permit cleanout and regrading.)
6. Stabilize outlets prior to or during construction of the diversion diverting sediment-laden storm water flow to a temporary sediment trap or a temporary dry sediment basin or other appropriate sediment control measures.
7. Stabilize diversions immediately after construction using vegetation and/or other suitable linings (e.g., riprap). If vegetation is used , protect newly seeded areas with properly anchored mulch, erosion control blankets, or by installing sod.

MAINTENANCE

The following items should be addressed on the inspection checklist and O & M manual.

Temporary Diversion:
- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- Remove sediment from channel to maintain positive grade.
- Check outlets and make necessary repairs immediately.
- Adjust ridge height to prevent overtopping.

- Check channel lining for exposed soil and reseed & mulch or re-sod.

Permanent Diversion:

- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days until surface is stabilized. Inspect annually after surface is stabilized.
- Remove sediment from channel to maintain positive grade.
- Check outlets and make necessary repairs immediately.
- Check channel lining for exposed soil and reseed & mulch or re-sod.

SPECIFICATIONS

Temporary Diversion:

- Maximum contributing area is 3 acres
- Minimum side slope = 3:1.
- Maximum slope = 1%.
- Minimum depth = 18 inches

Permanent Diversion:

- Maximum contributing area is 50 acres.
- Minimum side slope = 3:1

LIMITATIONS

Temporary Diversion:

- Maximum contributing area is 3 acres

Permanent Diversion:

- Maximum contributing area is 50 acres

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 130
Surface Stabilization –
Slope Drains

APPLICATION

Runoff down a bare earth slope will cause erosion. Diversion or conveyance over the unstablized surface can be used to remove the erosive flow.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

HDPE or PVC Pipe, UV-resistant.

DESCRIPTION

A slope drain is a temporary storm water control measure consisting of flexible or rigid tubing or conduit placed and anchored on an unvegetated slope to convey storm water runoff from the top of the slope to the bottom of the slope without causing erosion of the slope surface.

Outlet protection or flow dissipation should be included at the end of the slope drain. A berm or other means of collection and routing the runoff to the inlet must also be provided.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- The Slope drain must accommodate a two-year storm with the runoff calculated per the Lake County Stormwater Technical Standards and Clean Water Regulations Manual. This includes runoff estimates and pipe size.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets:

- Location of all proposed slope drains;
- Outlet protection;
- Inlet berm details including length, width, height and compaction requirements;
- Anchoring / installation detail.

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

1. Lay the pipe down the slope face and anchor it in place with stakes no more than 10 feet apart. Note: Place temporary slope drains on undisturbed soil or well-compacted fill.

2. Extend the pipe beyond the toe of the slope to a stable grade and terminate the pipe on a four-foot level section to protect the outlet from erosion.

3. Install a sediment trap or basin to capture sediment-laden water discharged from the pipe.

4. Set the slope drain inlet section at the bottom of the diversion channel.

5. Connect the pipe to the inlet section.

6. Construct a ridge over the inlet section of pipe by placing fill over the pipe in six-inch lifts.

7. Compact each lift by hand tamping under and around the inlet and along the pipe. Caution: **Compacting with heavy equipment may displace or collapse the pipe.**

8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 until the minimum depth, width, and side slope dimensions shown in the construction plans are reached. Making the top of the fill six inches higher than the adjoining diversion ridge creates an island over the pipe to prevent overtopping (see Temporary Slope Drain Worksheet).

9. Make all pipe connections watertight and secure so that joints will not separate in use.

10. Construct a temporary diversion channel towards the temporary slope drain. The diversion must have a stable, positive grade not exceeding two percent.

11. Following installation, stabilize all areas down slope of the diversion and where practical, all disturbed areas.

The SWPP must include a detail showing the pipe, anchoring and berm installation. Specification for the berm compaction should also be included.

MAINTENANCE

- Inspect within 24 hours of each rain event and at least once every seven calendar days.
- Check the inlet for sediment or trash accumulation; clear and restore to proper entrance condition.
- Check the fill over the pipe for settlement, cracking, or piping holes; repair immediately.
- Check pipe for evidence of leaks or inadequate anchoring; repair immediately.
- Check the outlet for erosion or sedimentation; clean and repair, or extend if necessary.
- Once slopes have been stabilized, remove temporary diversions and slope drains, and stabilize all disturbed areas.

CN 130
Surface Stabilization –
Slope Drains

SPECIFICATIONS

N/A

LIMITATIONS

- For large upstream areas (>1 ac), an actual diversion ditch should be constructed.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 131
Inlet Protection –
Rigid Frame Yard Inlet Protection

APPLICATION

Rear yards of residential subdivisions only. Commercial developments must use other inlet protection.

DESCRIPTION
The frame inlet protection consists of a welded wire covered with geotextile fabric and anchored with fastening rings.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets.

- Detail of the proposed inlet protector
- Assembly details / procedure

INSTALLATION / ASSEMBLY

Geotextile shall be wrapped three inches over the top member of the 6” x 6” welded wire mesh and secured with fastening rings at six inches on center. Geotextile shall be securedto the sides of the welded wire mesh with fastening rings at a spacing of one per square foot. The fastening rings shall penetrate both layers of geotextile and securely close around a steel member.

MAINTENANCE

- Check after each rainfall event, remove sediment as required..

SPECIFICATIONS

Welded Wire Mesh Specifications:
6” x 6” welded wire mesh shall be formed of 10ga. steel conforming to ASTM A-185.

CN 131

Inlet Protection –

Rigid Frame Yard Inlet Protection

Geotextile Fabric:

Geotextile Minimum Specifications		
Property	Test Method	Value
Flow rate	ASTM 4491	100gpm/ ft^2 min
Apparent Opening Size (AOS)	ASTM D4751	0.600 mm (30 US Sieve) max
UV Resistance	ASTM D4355	80% Strength Retained @ 500 hrs
Grab Tensile Strength	ASTM D4632 (MD / CD)	150 lbs / 95 lbs min
Grab Tensile Elongation	ASTM D4632 (MD / CD)	17% / 14% max
Mullen Burst Strength	ASTM D3786	175 psi

LIMITATIONS

- Yard inlet protection should not be used for areas > 10.5 ac.
- Should be used in conjunction with CN 112.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality*. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional and current information.

CN 132
Surface Stabilization -
Drive Watering

APPLICATION

Dirt drives and roadways used for construction activity such as soil hauling and material delivery can create a dust surface. This dust can be suspended by tires or wind.

APPROVED PRODUCTS

N/A

DESCRIPTION

Drive watering requires frequent wetting of the drive surface with a light spray of water. The surface is wetted frequently enough to keep the soil moist or wet but not saturated. The spray should not be strong enough to displace soil.

TECHNICAL INFORMATION REPORT (TIR) REQUIREMENTS

- No calculations are required in the TIR.

STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN REQUIREMENTS

The following items shall appear on the construction SWPPP plan sheets and detail sheets:

- The proposed construction drives / roads should be delineated on the plans, preferably by cross-hatching.

INSTALLATION / APPLICATION

N/A

MAINTENANCE

- Continuous monitoring during the dry season is required.

SPECIFICATIONS

N/A

LIMITATIONS

- Soil may dry rapidly and require continuous application of water.

REFERENCES

1. *The Indiana Storm Water Quality Design Manual, Planning and Specification*

Guide for Effective Erosion and Sediment Control and Post-Construction Water Quality. Published by the Indiana Department of Environmental Management.

2. See *http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org* for additional and current information

Appendix D
Minimum Specifications for Post-Construction Water Quality Practices (PC)

(Check the Lake County Surveyor's Office website for the most up-to-date approved practices – http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org)

Post-Construction BMPs

Table D-1
Approved Stormwater Pollution Control Practices for Post-Construction Application

Practice No.	BMP Description	Applicability	Fact Sheet
Planning / Non-Structural BMPs and LID			
1a			PC-100
Stormwater Harvesting			
3a	Cisterns	(1)	PC-103
3b	Rain Barrels	(1)	PC-103
3c	Underground Detention Tanks	(1)	PC-105
Suspended Solids Settling Facilities			
4a	Wet Detention / Retention Ponds	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-112
4b	Bioswales	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-111
4c	Extended Dry Detention Ponds	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-105
4d	Rain Gardens	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-101
4e	Bioswales	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-111
4f	Constructed Wetlands	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-104
4g	Bioretention	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-115
4h	Micro-Bioretention	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-116
4i	Innovative / Proprietary Water Quality Units	Suspended Solids	PC-117
Filtration Methods / Facilities			
5a	Infiltration Basins	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-106
5b	Catch Basins Inserts	Suspended Solids	PC-102
5c	Media Filtration – Sand Filter	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-108
5d	Infiltration Trenches	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-107
5e	Vegetation Filter Strip	Suspended Solids, Nutrients	PC-110
Floatable Capture			
6a	Hoods	Floatables	PC-114
6b	Submerged Outfalls	Floatables	Figure PC-112C
6c	Innovative / Proprietary Water Quality Units	(2)	PC-117
Runoff Volume Reduction Methods			
7a	Green Roofs	(1)	PC-114
7b	Rainwater Harvesting	(1)	PC-103,-105
7c	Infiltration Basins	(1)	PC-106
7d	Infiltration Trenches	(1)	PC-107
7e	Permeable Pavement	(Only when used with Infiltration as the only outlet)	PC-113

Note:

(1.) These practices do not necessarily meet the 80% TSS reduction goal alone. Additional water quality measure may be required.

(2.) Not all units will capture and retain floatables up to the first flush. The designer may need to add additional measures to capture all floatables.

BMP PC – 100

PLANNING - NON-STRUCTURAL BMPs / LID

DESCRIPTION

Stormwater design was (and often, still is) put off until the last stage of development. However, stormwater runoff should be one of the *first* planning tools when evaluating a site and is being looked at as a valuable natural resource, not a problem to be piped and conveyed into the nearest ditch, channel, or stream. Developers and municipalities are recognizing the benefits of incorporating stormwater management into the initial planning stages and integrating volume reduction practices into both private and public development and redevelopment projects.

The initial planning phase of a development project should include both non-structural BMPs and low-impact development (LID) practices to minimize runoff volume. The non-structural / LID approach to land development is a multi-step stormwater management approach that 1) utilizes thoughtful site planning and 2) manages rainfall at its source through the use of integrated and distributed micro-scale stormwater practices, with the ultimate goal of reducing runoff volume.

Examples of thoughtful site planning include: the preservation/protection of environmentally sensitive site features such as riparian buffers, wetlands, steep slopes, valuable (mature) trees, flood plains, woodlands, and highly permeable soils. Examples of integrated and distributed micro-scale stormwater practices include: bioretention, permeable pavers, flow through planters, rain barrels, and green roofs, among others. Ultimately, natural hydrologic functions such as storage, infiltration, evaporation, transpiration, and groundwater recharge are used to their fullest potential to help minimize the amount of stormwater runoff that must be managed. This helps users to control pollutants, reduce runoff volume, manage runoff timing, and address other ecological concerns. In addition for smaller redevelopment site where space is limited, LID practices could increase developable space and reduce space dedicated only to stormwater management.

In contrast, conventional land development techniques typically begin with clearing and grading the entire parcel, resulting in the removal of all vegetation. The next development steps traditionally include paving areas for roads and parking, building structures, and landscaping areas. This results in large amounts of impervious surface which prohibits stormwater from infiltrating into the ground to replenish the groundwater or supply local streams and wetlands with baseflow. In order to manage the large amount of runoff generated from the impervious surface created from development, engineers then design structural stormwater controls such as catch basins, pipes, and detention ponds

Traditionally, the development of a property results in the conversion of pervious areas into impervious surfaces. The pre-development pervious areas, naturally vegetated areas that allow rainwater to infiltrate into the ground to replenish groundwater resources and nourish plants. The post development impervious areas retard or prohibit the infiltration of rainwater, thus creating increased stormwater runoff peaks and volumes and creating water quality problems. In many cases the pervious surfaces that remain after development have lower permeability than in their undisturbed state and quickly become saturated by the increased runoff, resulting in increased runoff from these areas during intense rainfall.

Non-structural / LID development techniques lessen the impact of development and redevelopment on downstream drainage area by reducing the amount of impervious surface and runoff volume. Although some of the Non-structural / LID options do not exactly recreate natural conditions, they approximate those conditions to the extent that they lower runoff volume. The net result is that less impervious surface means lower runoff peak flows, lower runoff volumes, and lower pollutant export, all of which can mean lower development costs when compared to the standard site design approach. For the post-construction property owner the reduced imperviousness may mean lower stormwater user feesmanagement costs, and in the case of green roofs reduced heating/cooling costs.

Examples of the types of features that might be part of a Non-structural / LID design approach include:

- Green roofs
- Roof gardens
- Pervious pavement
- Vegetated swales
- Grassy swales
- Street swales
- Vegetated filter strips
- Biofiltration
- Vegetated infiltration basins
- Sand filters
- Wet, extended wet, and dry detention ponds
- Stormwater wetlands
- Manufactured treatment technologies
- Structural detention facilities
- Rainwater harvesting
- Drywells

ADVANTAGES

The potential advantages of the Non-structural / LID approach are:

- Lower construction costs
- Reduced stormwater maintenance costs
- Reduced stormwater volume
- More developable space

DESIGN CRITERIA

The TIR should include a low-impact practices discussion. The discussion should evaluate the application of planning, bioretention, stormwater harvesting, suspended solids settling facilities, filtration methods, floatable capture and runoff reduction methods to the proposed project.

BMP PC – 101
BIORETENTION FACILITY – RAIN GARDEN

DESCRIPTION

Bioretention is a best management practice (BMP) developed in the early 1990's by the Prince George's County, MD, Department of Environmental Resources (PGDER). Bioretention utilizes soils and both woody and herbaceous plants to remove pollutants from stormwater runoff. As shown in Figure 10-1, runoff is conveyed as sheet flow to the treatment area, which consists of a grass buffer strip, sand bedlevel spreader, ponding area, organic layer or mulch layer, planting soil, and plants. Runoff passes first over or through a sand bedlevel spreader, which slows the runoff's velocity, distributes it evenly along the length of the ponding area, which consists of a surface organic layer and/or ground cover and the underlying planting soil. The ponding area is graded; its center depressed. Water is ponded to a depth of 6 inches and gradually infiltrates the bioretention area and/or is evapotranspired. Bioretention areas are applicable as on-lot retention facilities that are designed to mimic forested systems that naturally control hydrology. The bioretention area is graded to drain excess runoff over a weir and into the storm drain system. Stored water in the bioretention area planting soil infiltrates over a period of days into the underlying soils.

The basic bioretention design shown below can be modified to accommodate more specific needs. The bioretention BMP design can be modified to include an underdrain within the sand bed to collect the infiltrated water and discharge it to a downstream storm drain system. This modification may be required when impervious subsoils and marine clays prevent complete infiltration in the soil system. This modified design makes the bioretention area act more as a filter that discharges treated water than as an infiltration device.

COMPONENTS

1. Grass Buffer Strip - DesignedPre- treatment to filter out coarse particulates, floatables and reduce runoff velocity.
2. Sand Bed Level Spreader -Further reduces Reduces velocity by capturing a portion of the runoff and distributes it evenly along the length of the ponding area. Also provides aeration to the plant bed and enhances infiltration.
3. Ponding Area -Collects and stores runoff prior to infiltration.
4. Organic/Mulch Layer -Provides some filtering of runoff, encourages development of beneficial microorganisms, and protects the soil surface from erosion.
5. Planting Soil -Provides nourishment for the plant life. Clay particles within the soil also remove certain pollutants through adsorption.
6. Plants -Provides uptake of harmful pollutants.

ADVANTAGES

1. If designed properly, has shown ability to remove significant amounts of dissolved heavy metals, phosphorous, TSS, and fine sediments.
2. Requires relatively little engineering design in comparison to other stormwater management facilities (e.g. sand filters).
3. Provides groundwater recharge when the runoff is allowed to infiltrate into the subsurface.
4. Enhances the appearance of parking lots and provides shade and wind breaks, absorbs

noise, and improves an area's landscape.

5. Maintenance on a bioretention facility is limited to the removal of leaves from the bioretention area each fall.
6. The vegetation recommended for use in bioretention facilities is generally hardier than the species typically used in parking lot landscapes. This is a particular advantage in urban areas where plants often fare poorly due to poor soils and air pollution.

LIMITATIONS

1. Low removal of nitrates.
2. Not applicable on steep, unstable slopes or landslide areas (slopes greater than 20 percent).
3. Requires relatively large areas.
4. Not appropriate at locations where the water table is within 6 feet of the ground surface and where the surrounding soil stratum is unstable.
5. Clogging may be a problem, particularly if the BMP receives runoff with high sediment loads.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. Calculate the volume of stormwater to be mitigated by the bioretention facility using the water quality volume calculations outlined in Chapter 9.
2. The soil should have infiltration rates greater than 0.5 inches per hour, otherwise an underdrain system should be included (see # 11). The infiltration rate of the native soil as well as the seasonal high water table must be determined by geotechnical investigation and / or a soil scientist.
3. Drainage to the bioretention facility must be graded to create sheet flow, not a concentrated stream. Level spreaders (i.e. slotted curbs) can be used to facilitate sheet flow. The maximum sheet flow velocity should be 1 ft/s for the planted ground cover and 3 ft/s for planted with mulched cover.
4. Soil shall be a uniform mix, free of stones, stumps, roots or other similar objects larger than 1-inch in diameter. No other materials or substances shall be mixed or dumped within the bioretention area that may be harmful to plant growth, or prove a hindrance to the planting or maintenance operations. The planting soil shall be free of noxious weeds.
5. Planting soil shall be tested and meet the following criteria:

Planting Soil Criteria	
pH range	5.2-7.0
Organic matter	1.5-4.0%
Magnesium	35 lbs. per acre, minimum
Phosphorus P_2O_5	75 lbs. per acre, minimum
Potassium K_2O	85 lbs. per acre, minimum
Soluble salts	not to exceed 500 ppm
Clay	0-25% by volume
Silt	30-55% by volume
Sand	35-60% by volume

6. It is very important to minimize compaction of both the base of the bioretention area and the required backfill. When possible, use excavation hoes to remove original soil. If excavated using a loader, the excavator should use a wide track or marsh track equipment, or light equipment with turf type tires. Use of equipment with narrow tracks or narrow tires, rubber tires with large lugs, or high pressure tires will cause excessive compaction resulting in reduced infiltration rates and storage volumes and is not acceptable. Compaction will significantly contribute to design failure.
7. Compaction can be alleviated at the base of the bioretention facility by using a primary tilling operation such as a chisel plow, ripper, or subsoiler. These tilling operations are to refracture the soil profile through the 12 inch compaction zone. Substitute methods must be approved by the engineer. Rototillers typically do not till deep enough to reduce the effects of compaction from heavy equipment. Rototill 2 to 3 inches of sand into the base of the bioretention facility before back filing the required sand layer. Pump any ponded water before preparing (rototilling) base.
8. When back filling topsoil over the sand layer, first place 3 to 4 inches of topsoil over the sand, then rototill the sand/topsoil to create a gradation zone. Backfill the remainder of the topsoil to final grade.
9. Mulch around individual plants only. Shredded hardwood mulch is the only accepted mulch. Shredded hardwood mulch must be well aged (stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months) for acceptance. The mulch should be applied to a maximum depth of 3-inches.
10. The plant root ball should be planted so $1/8^{th}$ of the ball is above final grade surface.
11. If used, place underdrains on a 3 feet wide section of filter cloth followed by a gravel bedding. Pipe is placed next, followed by the gravel bedding. The ends of underdrain pipes not terminating in an observation well shall be capped.
12. The main collector pipe for underdrain systems shall be constructed at a minimum slope of 0.5%. Observation wells and/or clean-out pipes must be provided (one minimum per every 1,000 square feet of surface area).
13. Size an emergency overflow weir with 6-inches of head, using the Weir equation: $Q=CLH^{3/2}$ Where C= 2.65 (smooth crested grass weir)
    Q= flow rate H = 6-inches of head L = length of weir
14. Bioretention areas should be at least 15 feet wide with a 25 foot width preferable, and a minimum length of 40 feet long. Generally, Tthe minimum length-to-width ratio should shall be around 2 to 1 to improve surface flow characteristics.
15. The plant soil depth should be 4 feet or more to provide beneficial root zone, both in terms of space and moisture content.
16. The depth of the ponding area should be limited to no more than 6 inches to limit the

duration of standing water to no more than 4 days72 hours. If an underdrain system is used, the depth of the ponding area should be limited to no more than 1 foot. Longer ponding times can lead to anaerobic conditions that are not conductive to plant growth. Longer periods of standing water can also lead to the breeding of mosquitoes and other pests.

17. The bioretention area should be vegetated to resemble a terrestrial forest community ecosystem, which is dominated by understory trees, a shrub layer, and herbaceous ground covers. Three species each of both trees and shrubs are recommended to be planted at a rate of 1000 total trees and shrubs per acre. The shrub-to-tree ratio should be 2:1 to 3:1. Trees should be spread 12 feet apart and the shrubs should be spaced 8 feet apart.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Removal of debris from the outlet.
- Maximum infiltration time – The maximum drain-down time must be provided and instructions for remediation when drain-down time exceeds this time.
- Yearly changing of mulch.
- Maximum sediment depth – The maximum sediment depth at which cleraning is required must be provided. Reference to a sediment depth marker and remedial instructions must be discussed.
- Maintenance of plants – Special instruction for maintaining plants and replanting must be addressed.
- Maintenance of underdrains.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. S. Bitter and J. Keith Bowers, 1994. Bioretention as a Water Quality Best Management Practice. *Watershed Protection Techniques*, Vol. 1, No. 3. Silver Spring, MD.
2. The Center for Watershed Protection, Environmental Quality Resources and Loiederman Associates. 1997. *Maryland Stormwater Design Manual*. Prepared for: Maryland Department of the Environment. Baltimore, MD.
3. A.P. Davis, M. Shokouhian, H. Sharma, C. Minani, 1998. *Optimization of Bioretention Design for Water Quality and Hydrologic Characteristics*.
4. DEQ Storm Water Management Guidelines, Department of Environmental Quality, State of Oregon. http://waterquality.deq.state.or.us/wq/groundwa/swmgmtguide.htm
5. *Design Manual for Use of Bioretention in Stormwater Management*, 1993. Department of Environmental Resources, Division of Environmental Management, Watershed Protection Branch, Prince George's County, MD.
6. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.

7. G.L. Hightshoe, 1988. *Native Trees, Shrubs, and Vines for Urban and Rural America*. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, NY.
8. *Low-Impact Development Design Manual*, November 1997. Department of Environmental Resources, Prince George's County, MD.
9. *Maryland Stormwater Design Manual Volumes I & II*, December 1999 Draft. Maryland Department of the Environment, Baltimore, MD.
10. T.R. Schueler, 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban Best Management Practices*. Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments.
11. T.R. Schueler, 1992. *A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices*. Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments.
12. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

BMP PC – 101
BIORETENTION FACILITY – RAIN GARDEN

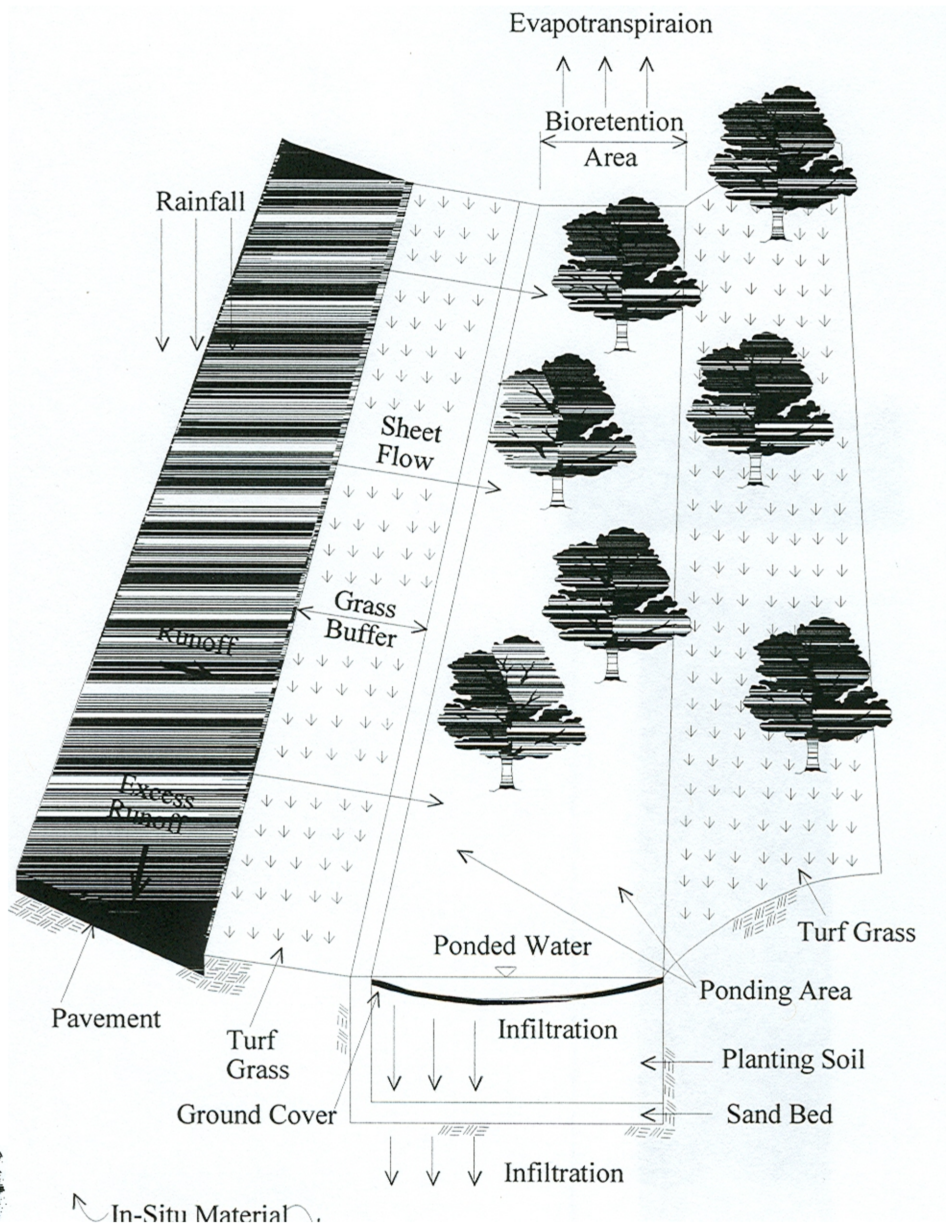


Figure PC-101A
Schematic of Bioretention / Rain Garden Area (SUSMP, 2002)

BMP PC – 102
CATCH BASIN INSERTS

DESCRIPTION

A catch basin insert is any device that can be inserted into an existing catch basin design to provide some level of runoff contaminant removal. Currently, there are many different catch basin insert models available, with applications ranging from trash and debris removal to carbon adsorption of aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbons and heavy metals removal. Costs vary widely. The most frequent application for catch basin inserts is for reduction of sediment, oil, and grease levels in stormwater runoff. These catch basin inserts should also have an overflow outlet, through which water exceeding the treatment capacity can escape without flooding the adjacent area. If a catch basin insert is used to capture floatables, the floatable material must remain captured during high flow events, i.e. flows above the first flush.

ADVANTAGES

1. Provides moderate removal of larger particles and debris as pretreatment.
2. Low installation costs.
3. Units can be installed in existing traditional stormwater infrastructure.
4. Ease of installation.
5. Requires no additional land area.

LIMITATIONS

1. Vulnerable to accumulated sediments being resuspended at low flow rates.
2. Severe clogging potential if exposed soil surfaces exist upstream.
3. Maintenance and inspection of catch basin inserts are to be required before and after EACH future rainfall event, an excessive cleaning and maintenance requirement when compared to other practices.
4. Available hydraulic head to meet design criteria.
5. Dissolved pollutants are not captured by filter media.
6. Limited pollutant removal capabilities.
7. Floatable material may lost during high flow events.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. Calculate the flow rate of stormwater to be mitigated by the catch basin insert using the methodology outlined in Chapter 9.
2. Select a devise with a flow rate at or above the calculated treatment rate. Approved catch basin inserts and their respective maximum flow rates are listed on *http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org*.

Because of the susceptibility for clogging and extensive maintenance, the developer should pay special attention to addressing the maintenance and inspection provisions for catch basin inserts after EACH storm event (greater than 0.5" of rainfall) over the life of the development, including financial provisions for this activity. This factor often discourages the use of catch basin inserts.

BMP PC – 102
CATCH BASIN INSERTS

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Removal of debris from the insert.
- Maintenance of specialty filters such as activated carbon socks.
- Inspection checklist.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. The Center for Watershed Protection, Environmental Quality Resources and Loiederman Associates. 1997. *Maryland Stormwater Design Manual*. Prepared for: Maryland Department of the Environment. Baltimore, MD.
2. DEQ Storm Water Management Guidelines, Department of Environmental Quality, State of Oregon. http://waterquality.deq.state.or.us/wq/groundwa/swmgmtguide.htm
3. K. H. Lichten, June 1997. *Compilation of New Development Stormwater Treatment Controls in the San Francisco Bay Area*, Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, San Francisco, CA.
4. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.
5. See – http://www.lakecountysurveyor.org for additional information.

BMP PC – 103
STORMWATER HARVESTING – Cisterns / Rain Barrels

DESCRIPTION

Cisterns barrels are containers which capture stormwater runoff as it comes down through the roof gutter system. The cisterns are also known as "rain barrels". Collected stormwater can later be used to water the garden or lawn. The collection of this stormwater reduces the amount of stormwater runoff and assists in the reduction of potential pollutants entering the stormwater conveyance system. In a residential application, rain barrels are incorporated into the plan for each lot. In order to be effective, there must be some provision for ensuring that the cisterns will be maintained and remain in use on each individual lot.

ADVANTAGES

1. Low installation cost.
2. Requires little space for installation.
3. Reduces amount of stormwater runoff.
4. Conserves water usage.

LIMITATIONS

1. Limited amount of stormwater runoff can be captured.
2. Restricted to structure runoff.
3. Aesthetically unpleasing.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. Calculate the volume of stormwater to be mitigated by the cistern using the methods outlined in Chapter 910.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Inspection Checklist.
- Removal of debris from the capture system.
- Monitoring and removal of sediment.
- Monitoring and maintenance of the flying insect cover.
- Sight diagram showing the system.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement (if is part of the water quality system).

REFERENCES

1. *Low-Impact Development Design Manual*, November 1997. Department of Environmental Resources, Prince George's County, MD.
2. Rainwater Collection and Gray Water as alternative Water Supply Sources. http://www.mindspring.com/~roadrunner1/Family_Focus/Rainwater_Collection.html.
3. T. Richman, J. Worth, P. Dawe, J. Aldrich, and B. Ferguson, 1997. *Start at the Source: Residential Site Planning and Design Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Protection*, Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, San Francisco, CA.
4. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

BMP PC – 104
CONSTRUCTED WETLANDS

DESCRIPTION

Wetlands provide physical, chemical, and biological water quality treatment of stormwater runoff. Physical treatment occurs as a result of decreasing flow velocities in the wetland, and is present in the form of evaporation, sedimentation, adsorption, and/or filtration. Chemical processes include chelation, precipitation, and chemical adsorption. Biological processes include decomposition, plant uptake and removal of nutrients, plus biological transformation and degradation. Hydrology is one of the most influential factors in pollutant removal due to its effects on sedimentation, aeration, biological transformation, and adsorption onto bottom sediments (Dormann, et al., 1988). The large surface area of the bottom of the wetland encourages higher levels of adsorption, absorption, filtration, microbial transformation, and biological utilization than might normally occur in more channelized water courses.

A natural wetland is defined by examination of the soils, hydrology, and vegetation which are dominant in the area. Wetlands are characterized by the substrate being predominantly undrained hydric soil. A wetland may also be characterized by a substrate which is non-soil and is saturated with water or covered by shallow water at some time during the growing season of each year. Wetlands also usually support hydrophytes, or plants which are adapted to aquatic and semiaquatic environments. Natural and artificial wetlands are used to treat stormwater runoff. Figure 10-2 illustrates an artificial wetland used for treating stormwater runoff.

The success of a wetland will be much more likely if some general guidelines are followed. The wetland should be designed such that a minimum amount of maintenance is required. This will be affected by the plants, animals, microbes, and hydrology. The natural surroundings, including such things as the potential energy of a stream or a flooding river, should be utilized as much as possible. It is necessary to recognize that a fully functional wetland cannot be established spontaneously. Time is required for vegetation to establish and for nutrient retention and wildlife enhancement to function efficiently. Also, the wetland should approximate a natural situation as much as possible, and unnatural attributes, such as a rectangular shape or a rigid channel, should be avoided (Mitsch and Gosselink, 1993).

1. *Natural Wetland Systems*. Existing wetlands perform storm water treatment in the same fashion as constructed wetlands. However, current policy of the Indiana Department of Environmental Management prohibit the use of existing wetlands as a pollution control measure. Therefore, the use of existing wetlands as a proposed BMP cannot be accepted under any circumstance by Lake County Surveyor without the prior written acceptance by IDEM for such proposed pollution control use.

2. Constructed (*Artificial) wetlands.* Site considerations should include the water table depth, soil/substrate, and space requirements. Because the wetland must have a source of flow, it is desirable that the water table is at or near the surface. This is not always possible. If runoff is the only source of inflow for the wetland, the water level often fluctuates and establishment of vegetation may be difficult. The soil or substrate of an

artificial wetland should be loose loam to clay. A perennial base flow must be present to sustain the artificial wetland. The presence of organic material is often helpful in increasing pollutant removal and retention.

Wetland vegetation can be categorized as either emergent, floating, or submerged. Emergent vegetation is rooted in the sediments, but grows through the water and above the water surface. Floating vegetation is not rooted in the sediments, and has aquatic roots with plant parts partly submerged or fully exposed on the water or surface. Submerged vegetation includes aquatic plants such as algae or plants rooted in the sediments, with all plant parts growing within the water column. Pollutant removal rates generally improve with an increase in the diversity of the vegetation.

The depth of inundation will contribute to the pollutant removal efficiency. Generally, shallow water depths allow for higher pollutant removal efficiencies due to an increased amount of adsorption onto bottom sediments (Dormann, et al.,1988). Flow patterns in the wetland will affect the removal efficiency also. Meandering channels, slow-moving water and a large surface area will increase pollutant removal through increased sedimentation. Shallow, sheet flow also increases the pollutant removal capabilities, through assimilative processes. A deep pool sometimes improves the denitrification potential. A mixed flow pattern will increase overall pollutant removal efficiency (Dormann, et al., 1988).

Using a site where nearby wetlands still exist is recommended if possible. A hydrologic study should be done to determine if flooding occurs and saturated soils are present. A site where natural inundation is frequent is a good potential site (Mitsch and Gosselink, 1993). Loamy soils are required to permit plants to take root (Urbonas, 1992)

ADVANTAGES

1. Constructed wetlands offer natural aesthetic qualities, wildlife habitat, erosion control, and pollutant removal.
2. Constructed wetlands can offer good treatment following treatment by other BMPs, such as wet ponds, that rely upon settling of larger sediment particles (Urbonas, 1992). They are useful for large basins when used in conjunction with other BMPs.
3. Wetlands which are permanently flooded are less sensitive to polluted water inflows because the ecosystem does not depend upon the polluted water inflow.
4. Can provide uptake of soluble pollutants such as phosphorous, through plant uptake.
5. Can be used as a regional facility.

LIMITATIONS

1. Although the use of natural wetlands may be appear to be more cost effective than the use of constructed wetlands; environmental, permitting and legal issues prohibit the use of natural wetlands for this purpose.
2. Wetlands require a continuous base flow.
3. If not properly maintained, wetlands can accumulate salts and scum which can be flushed

out by large storm flows.

4. Regular maintenance, including plant harvesting, is required to provide nutrient removal.
5. Frequent sediment removal is required to maintain the proper functioning of the wetland.
6. A greater amount of space is required for a wetland system than is required for an extended/dry detention basin treating the same amount of area.
7. Although constructed wetlands are designed to act as nutrient sinks, on occasion, the wetland may periodically become a nutrient source.
8. Wetlands which are not permanently flooded are more likely to be affected by drastic changes in inflow of polluted water.
9. Cannot be used on steep unstable slopes or densely populated areas.
10. Harvested wetlands may require special disposal methods, due to heavy metal uptake.
11. Threat of mosquitoes.
12. Hydraulic capacity may be reduced with plant overgrowth.

DESIGN CRITERIA

The wetland may be designed as either a stand-alone BMP, or as part of a larger non-point source treatment facility in conjunction with other devices, such as a wet pond, sediment forebay, or infiltration basin. Basic design elements and considerations are listed below.

1. *Volume.* The wetland pond should provide a minimum permanent storage equal to three-fourths of the water quality volume. The full water quality capture volume should be provided above the permanent pool. Calculate the water quality volume to be mitigated by the wetland using the method of Chapter 9.
2. *Depth.* A constant shallow depth should be maintained in the wetland, at approximately 1 ft or less (Schueler, 1987; Boutiette and Duerring, 1994), with 0.5 ft being more desirable (Schueler, 1987). If the wetland is designed as a very shallow detention pond, the pond should provide the full water quality capture volume above the permanent pool level. The permanent wetland depth should be 6 to 12 inches deep. The depth of the water quality volume above the permanent pool should not exceed 2 ft (Urbonas, 1992). Regrading may be necessary to allow for this shallow depth over a large area.

   It may also be beneficial to create a wetland with a varying depth. A varying depth within the wetland will enable more diverse vegetation to flourish. Deep water offers a habitat for fish, creates a low velocity area where flow can be redistributed, and can enhance nitrification as a prelude to later denitrification if nitrogen removal is desired. Open-water areas may vary in depth between 2 and 4 ft (Urbonas, 1992).
3. *Surface Area.* Increasing the surface area of the pond increases the nutrient removal capability (Boutiette and Duerring, 1994). A general guideline for surface area is using a marsh area of two to three percent of the contributing drainage area. The minimum surface area of the pond can also be calculated by determining the nutrient loading to the wetland. The nutrient loading to a wetland used for stormwater treatment should not be more than 45 lbs/ac of phosphorus or 225 lbs/ac of nitrogen per year. The pond could be sized to meet this minimum size requirement if the annual nutrient load at the site is known (Schueler, 1987). If unknown, the nutrient loads can be estimated using the methodology of Chapter 8.
4. *Longitudinal Slope.* Both wetland ponds and channels require a near-zero longitudinal slope (Urbonas, 1992).

5. *Base flow.* Enough inflow must be present in the wetland to maintain wetland soil and vegetation conditions. A water balance should be calculated. Dependence on groundwater for a moisture supply is not recommended.

$$S = Qi + R + Inf - Qo - ET$$

Where:
S = net change in storage
Qi = stormwater runoff inflow
R = contribution from rainfall
Inf = net infiltration (infiltration – exfiltration)
Qo = surface outflow
ET = evapotranspiration

6. *Seeding.* It is important that any seed which is used to establish vegetation germinate and take root before the site is inundated, or the seeds will be washed away. Live plants (plugs) should be considered for areas inundated even during construction.
7. *Length to Width Ratio.* The pond should gradually expand from the inlet and gradually contract toward the outlet. The length to width ratio of the wetland should shall be 2:1 to 4:1, with a minimum a length to width ratio of 3:1 recommended (Urbonas, 1992)
8. *Emptying Time.* The water quality volume above the permanent pool should empty in approximately 24 hours (Urbonas, 1992). This emptying time is not for the wetland itself, but for the additional storage above the wetland. Failure to approach this criteria is often the source of failure for constructed wetlands planned for the base of a water quantity storage facility.
9. *Inlet and Outlet Protection.* Inlet and outlet protection should be provided to reduce erosion of the basin. Velocity should be reduced at the entrance to reduce re-suspension of sediment by using a forebay. The forebay should be approximately 5 to 10 percent of the water quality capture volume. The outlet should be placed in an offbay at least 3 ft deep. It may be necessary to protect the outlet with a skimmer shield that starts approximately one-half of the depth below the permanent water surface and extends above the maximum capture volume depth. A skimmer can be constructed from a stiff steel screen material that has smaller openings than the outlet orifice or perforations.
10. *Infiltration Avoidance.* Loss of water through infiltration should be avoided. This can be done by compacting the soil, incorporating clay into the soil, or lining the pond with artificial lining.
11. *Side Slopes.* Side slopes should be gradual to reduce erosion and enable easy maintenance. Side slopes should not be steeper than 4:1, and 5:1 is preferable (Urbonas, 1992).
12. *Open Water.* At least 25 percent of the basin should be an open water area at least 2 ft deep if the device is exclusively designed as a shallow marsh. The open water area will make the marsh area more aesthetically pleasing, and the combined water/wetland area will create a good habitat for waterfowl (Schueler, 1987). The combination of forebay, outlet and free water surface should be 30 to 50 percent, and this area should be between 2 and 4 ft deep. The wetland zone should be 50 to 70 percent of the area, and should be 6 to 12 inches deep (Urbonas, 1992).
13. *Freeboard.* The wetland pond should be designed with at least 1 ft of freeboard (Camp, Dresser and McKee, 1993).
14. *Use with Wet Pond.* Shallow marshes can be established at the perimeter of a wet pond

by grading to form a 10 to 20 ft wide shallow bench. Aquatic emergent vegetation can be established in this area. A shallow marsh area can also be used near the inflow channel for sediment deposition (Schueler, 1987).

15. *Shape.* The shape is an important aspect of the wetland. It is recommended that a littoral shelf with gently sloping sides of 6:1 or milder to a point 24 to 28 inches below the water surface (Mitsch and Gosselink, 1993). Bottom slopes of less than one percent slope are also recommended.
16. *Soils*. Clay soils underlying the wetland will help prevent percolation of water to groundwater. However, clay soils will also prevent root penetration, inhibiting growth. Loam and sandy soils may then be preferable. A good design may be use of local soils at the upper layer with clay beneath to prevent infiltration (Mitsch and Gosselink, 1993).
17. *Vegetation.* Vegetation must be established in the wetland to aid in slowing down velocities, and nutrient uptake in the wetland. A dependable way of establishing vegetation in the wetland is to transplant live plants or dormant rhizomes from a nursery. Emergent plants may eventually migrate into the wetland from upstream, but this is not a reliable source of vegetation. Transplanting vegetation from existing wetland areas is not encouraged, as it may damage the existing wetland area. Seeding is more cost effective, but is also not reliable. Vegetation should be selected by a qualified wetland scientist.
18. *ForebayPre-Treatment.* A forebay or other pre-treatment practice shall be provided to partially protect proposed wetland plantings from sediment loadings. If a forebay is provided, the forebay volume should be about 5 to 10 percent of the water quality volume. The pre-treatment method must also capture and retain floatable material.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Inspection checklist.
- Capture and removal of floating debris from the outlet.
- Monitoring and maintenance of vegetation.
- Monitoring and removal of sediment from pre-treatment system.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. L. N. Boutiette and C. L. Duerring, 1994. *Massachusetts Nonpoint Source Management Manual, The Megamanual: A Guidance Document for Municipal Officials*, Massachusetts Department of Environmental Protection, Office of Watershed Management, Nonpoint Source Program, Boston, MA.
2. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board, Alameda, CA.
3. The Center for Watershed Protection, 1994. *Watershed Protection Techniques*, Vol. 1

No. 2, The Center for Watershed Protection, Silver Spring, MD.

4. M. E. Dormann, J. Hartigan, and B. Maestri, 1988. Retention, Detention, and Overland Flow for Pollutant Removal from Highway Stormwater Runoff: Interim Guidelines for Management Measures, FHWA/RD-87/056, Federal Highway Administration, Versar, Inc., Springfield, VA.
5. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.
6. W. J. Mitsch and J. G. Gosselink, 1993. *Wetlands*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, NY.
7. T. R. Schueler, 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs*, Department of Environmental Programs, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.
8. B. R. Urbonas, J. T. Doerfer, J. Sorenson, J. T. Wulliman, and T. Fairley, 1992. Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 3 - Best Management Practices, Stormwater Quality, Urban Drainage and Flood Control District, Denver, CO.
9. Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Draft BMP CW:Constructed Wetlands*, June 1999. Ventura, CA.
10. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

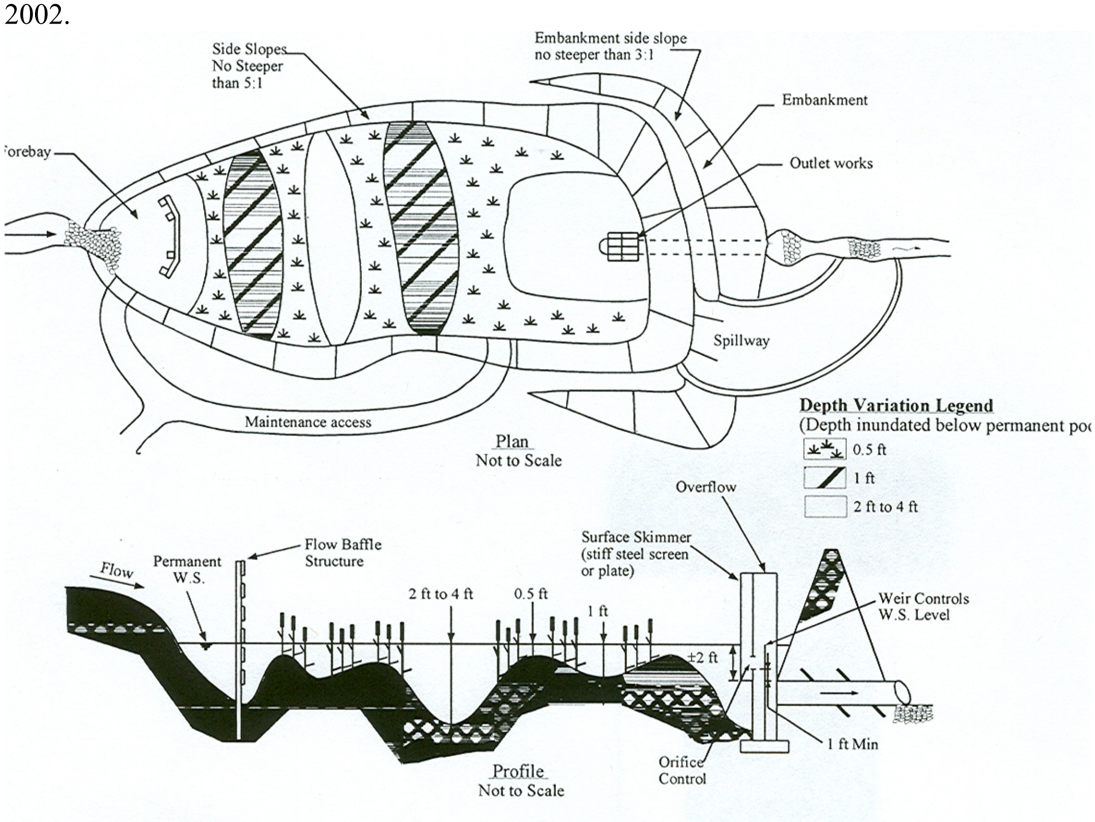


Figure PC-104A
Typical Constructed Wetland Components (SUSMP, 2002)

BMP PC – 105
EXTENDED/DRY DETENTION BASINS OR UNDERGROUND DETENTION TANKS / VAULTS

DESCRIPTION

Extended/dry detention basins are depressed basins that temporarily store a portion of stormwater runoff following a storm event. Underground detention tanks function similar to detention basins. However, since underground detention tanks are located below ground, the surface above these systems can be utilized for other more useful needs (parking lots, sidewalks, landscaping adjacent to buildings, etc). Water is controlled by means of a hydraulic control structure (orifice and/or weirs) to restrict outlet discharge. The extended/dry detention basins and underground detention tanks normally do not have a permanent water pool between storm events. The objectives of both systems are to remove particulate pollutants and to reduce maximum runoff values associated with development to their pre-development levels. Detention basin facilities may be berm-encased areas or excavated basins. Detention tank facilities may be corrugated metal pipe, concrete pipe, or vaults.

ADVANTAGES

1. Modest removal efficiencies for the larger particulate fraction of pollutants.
2. Removal of sediment and buoyant materials. Nutrients, heavy metals, toxic materials, and oxygen-demanding particles are also removed with sediment substances associated with the particles.
3. Can be designed for combined flood control and stormwater quality control.
4. May requires less capital cost and land area when compared to wet pond BMP.
5. Downstream channel protection when properly designed and maintained.

LIMITATIONS

1. Require sufficient area and hydraulic head to function properly.
2. Generally not effective in removing dissolved and finer particulate size pollutants from stormwater.
3. Some constraints other than the existing topography include, but are not limited to, the location of existing and proposed utilities, depth to bedrock, location and number of existing trees, and wetlands.
4. Extended/dry detention basins have moderate to high maintenance requirements.
5. Sediments can be resuspended if allowed to accumulate over time and escape through the hydraulic control to downstream channels and streams.
6. Some environmental concerns with using extended/dry detention basins, include potential impact on wetlands, wildlife habitat, aquatic biota, and downstream water quality.
7. May create mosquito breeding conditions and other nuisances.

DESIGN CRITERIA

EXTENDED/DRY DETENTION BASINS:

BMP PC – 105
EXTENDED/DRY DETENTION BASINS OR UNDERGROUND DETENTION TANKS / VAULTS

Criteria	Consideration
Storage volume	Calculate the volume of stormwater to be mitigated by the extended/dry detention basin using the method in Chapter 9. Provide a storage volume for 120 percent of the water quality volume. The additional 20 percent of storage volume provides for sediment accumulation and the resultant loss in storage volume.
Emptying time	A 24- to 48-hour emptying time should be used for the runoff volume generated from water quality volume, with no more than 50 percent of the water quality volume being released in 12 hours.
Basin geometry	Shape the pond with a gradual expansion from the inlet and a gradual contraction toward the outlet, thereby limiting short circuiting. The basin length to width ratio should be not less than 4
Two-stage design	A two-stage design with a lower frequency pool that fills often with frequently occurring runoff minimizes standing water and sediment deposition in the remainder of the basin can enhance water quality benefits. The bottom stage should store 10 to 25 percent of the water quality volume.
Low-flow channel	Conveys low base flows from the forebay to the outlet. Erosion protection should be provided for the low-flow channel. The low-flow must be vegetated to provide water quality.
Basin side slopes	Slopes should be stable and gentle enough to limit rill erosion and facilitate maintenance access and needs. Side slopes should be no steeper than 4:1 (H:V), preferably flatter.
Inlet	Dissipate flow energy at basin's inflow point(s) to limit erosion and promote particle sedimentation.
Forebay design	Provide the opportunity for larger particles to settle out in an area that has, as a useful refinement, a solid surface bottom to facilitate mechanical sediment removal. The forebay volume should be 5 to 10 percent of the water quality volume and provide a means to capture floatable materials.
Outlet design	Use a water quality outlet that is capable of slowly releasing the water quality over a 24- to 48-hour period. A perforated riser can be used in conjunction with orifices and a weir box opening above it to control larger storm outflows. An anti-seep collar should be considered for the outlet pipe to control seepage.
Perforation protection	Provide a crushed rock blanket of sufficient size to prevent clogging of the primary water quality outlet while not interfering significantly with its hydraulic capacity.
Dam embankment	The embankment should be designed not to fail during a 100-yr and larger storm. Embankment slopes should be no steeper than 3:1 (H:V), preferably 4:1, and flatter, and planted with turf-forming

	grasses. Poorly compacted native soils should be excavated and replaced. Embankment soils should be compacted to at least 95 percent of their maximum density.
Vegetation	Bottom vegetation provides erosion control and sediment entrapment. Basin bottom, berms, and side-sloping areas may be planted with native grasses or with irrigated turf, depending on the local setting.
Maintenance access	Access to the forebay and outlet area shall be provided to maintenance vehicles. Maximum grades should be eight percent, and a solid driving surface of gravel, rock, concrete, gravel-stabilized turf, or other approved surface should be provided.

***UNDERGROUND DETENTION TANKS/ VAULTS*:**

Criteria	Consideration
Storage volume	Calculate the volume of stormwater to be mitigated by the extended/dry detention basin using the method in Chapter 9. Provide a storage volume for 120 percent of the water quality volume. The additional 20 percent of storage volume provides for sediment accumulation and the resultant loss in storage volume.
Emptying time	A 24- to 48-hour emptying time should be used for the runoff volume generated from water quality volume, with no more than 50 percent of the water quality volume being released in 12 hours.
Tank geometry	Tank should be constructed to fit within the site layout.
Low-flow outlet	Conveys low base flows from the tank to the outlet.
Outlet design	Use a water quality outlet that is capable of slowly releasing the runoff volume generated from 0.75-inches of rainfall over a 24- to 48-hour period.
Overflow design	Runoff volume generated from a storm greater than the water quality event (See Chapter 9) should be diverted via a flow splitter placed at the tank entrance or an overflow weir/orifice system designed in conjunction with the outlet of the tank.
Pre-Treatment	Tanks should also include a pre-treatment area or zone with easy access for inspection and cleaning. This area should also capture and retain floatable material.
Maintenance access	Access to the tanks shall be provided for maintenance personal.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Inspection checklist.
- Capture and removal of floating debris.
- Monitoring and removal of sediment.
- Monitoring and maintenance of underdrain systems.
- Monitoring and maintenance of vegetation.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board, Alameda, CA.
2. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.
3. K. H. Lichten, June 1997. *Compilation of New Development Stormwater Treatment Controls in the San Francisco Bay Area*, Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, San Francisco, CA.
4. *Low-Impact Development Design Manual*, November 1997. Department of Environmental Resources, Prince George's County, MD.
5. T. R. Schueler, 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs*, Department of Environmental Programs, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.
6. Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Draft BMP DD: Extended Dry Detention Basins*, June 1999. Ventura, CA.
7. G. K. Young and F. Graziano, 1989. *Outlet Hydraulics of Extended Detention Facilities*, Northern Virginia Planning District Commission, Annandale, VA.
8. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

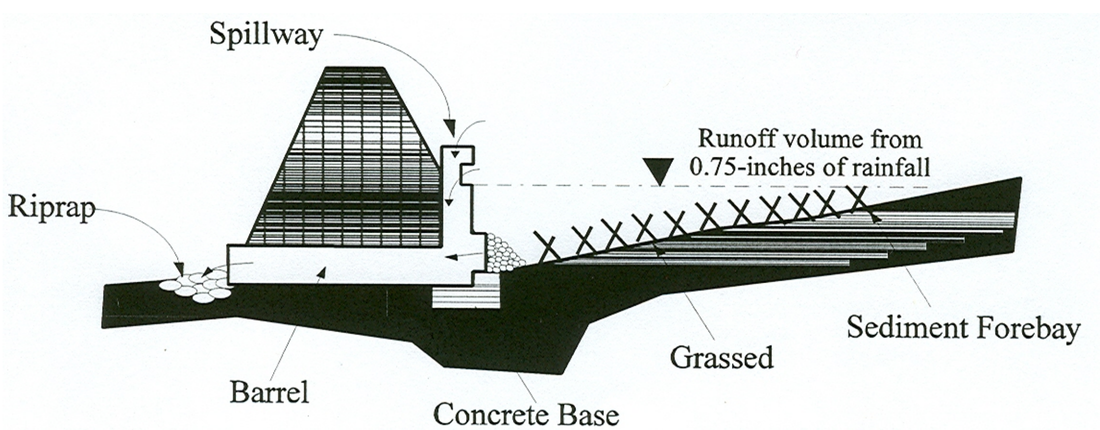


Figure PC-105A
Typical Extended Dry Detention Components (SUSMP, 2002)

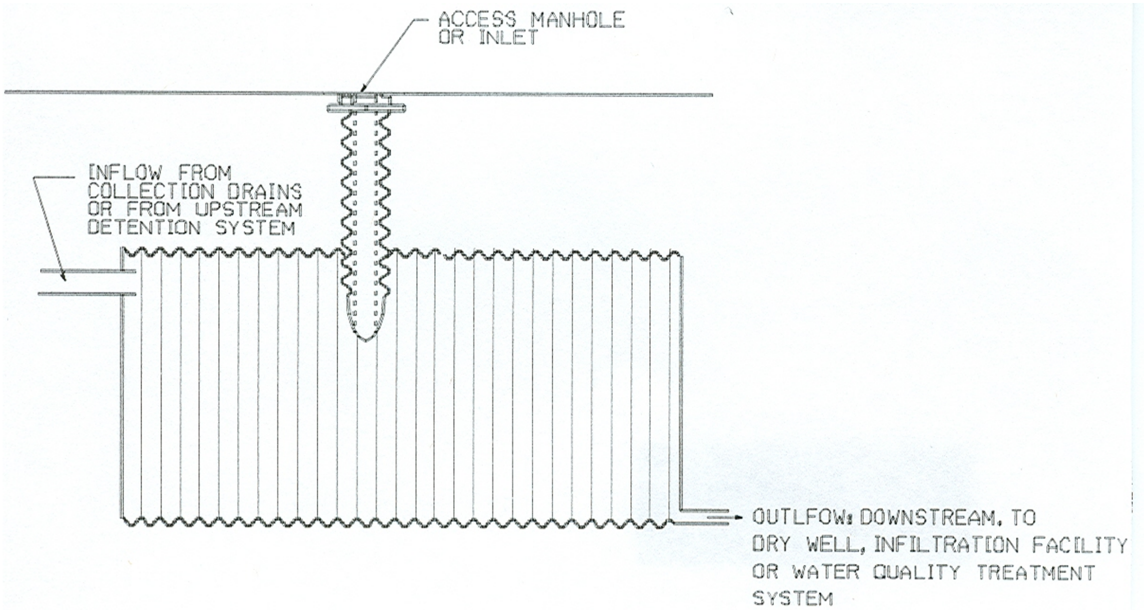


Figure PC-105B
Typical Underground Detention Components (SUSMP, 2002)

BMP PC – 106
INFILTRATION BASINS

DESCRIPTION

An infiltration basin is a surface pond which captures first-flush stormwater and treats it by allowing it to percolate into the ground and through permeable soils. As the stormwater percolates into the ground, physical, chemical, and biological processes occur which remove both sediments and soluble pollutants. Pollutants are trapped in the upper layers of the soil, and the water is then released to groundwater. Infiltration basins are generally used for drainage areas between 5 and 50 acres (Boutiette and Duerring, 1994). For drainage areas less than 5 acres, an infiltration trench or other BMP may be more appropriate. For drainage areas greater than 50 acres, maintenance of an infiltration basin would be burdensome, and an extended/dry detention basin or wet pond may be more appropriate. Infiltration basins are generally dry except immediately following storms, but a low-flow channel may be necessary if a constant base flow is present.

Infiltration basins create visible surface ponds that dissipate because water is infiltrated through the pond bottom; infiltration trenches hide surface drainage in underground void regions and the water is infiltrated below the rocks. Infiltration basins effectively remove soluble pollutants because processes such as adsorption and biological processes remove these soluble pollutants from stormwater. This kind of treatment is not always available in other kinds of BMPs.

Several types of infiltration basins exist. They can be either in-line or off-line, and may treat different volumes of water, such as the water quality volume or the 2-year or 10-year storm. A full infiltration basin is built to hold the entire water quality volume, and the only outlet from the pond is an emergency spillway. More commonly used is the combined infiltration/detention basin, where the outflow is controlled by a vertical riser. Excess flow volume spills over the drop inlet at the top of the riser, and very large storms will exit through the emergency spillway. Other types of basins include the side-by-side basin, and the off-line infiltration basin. The side by side basin consists of a basin with an elevated channel to carry base flows running along one of its sides. Storm flows also flow through the elevated channel, but overflow the channel and enter the basin when they become deep enough. An off-line infiltration basin is used to treat the first flush runoff, while higher flows remain in the main channel.

ADVANTAGES

1. High removal capability for particulate pollutants and moderate removal for soluble pollutants.
2. Groundwater recharge helps to maintain dry-weather flows in streams.
3. Can minimize increases in runoff volume.
4. When properly designed and maintained, it can replicate pre-development hydrology more closely than other BMP options.
5. Basins provide more habitat value than other infiltration systems.

LIMITATIONS

1. High failure rate due to clogging and high maintenance burden.
2. Low removal of dissolved pollutants in very coarse soils.
3. Not suitable on fill slopes or steep slopes.
4. Risk of groundwater contamination in very coarse soils, may require groundwater monitoring.
5. Should not be used if significant upstream sediment load exists.
6. Slope of contributing watershed needs to be less than 20 percent.
7. Not recommended for discharge to a sole source aquifer.
8. Cannot be located within 100 feet of drinking water wells.
9. Metal and petroleum hydrocarbons could accumulate in soils to potentially toxic levels.
10. Relatively large land requirement.
11. Only feasible where soil is permeable and there is sufficient depth to bedrock and water table.
12. Need to be located a minimum of 10 feet down gradient and 100 feet up gradient from building foundations because of seepage problems.
13. Infiltration facilities could fall under additional regulations of IDEM or IDNR regarding waste disposal to groundwater.

DESIGN CRITERIA

Designing an infiltration basin is a process in which several factors are examined. The soil type and the drainage area are important factors in infiltration basin design. If either one of these two is inappropriate, the infiltration basin will not function properly. The steps in the design of an infiltration basin are listed below.

1. *Drainage Area.* Drainage areas between 5 and 50 acres are good candidates for infiltration basins. Infiltration trenches might be more appropriate for smaller drainage areas, while retention ponds are more appropriate for larger drainage areas (Schueler, 1987).
2. *Soils.* The site must have the appropriate soil, or the basin will not function properly. It is important that the soil be able to accept water at a minimum infiltration rate. Soils with an infiltration rate of less than 0.3 inches per hour, are not suitable sites for infiltration basins. Soils with a high percentage of clay are also undesirable, and should not be used if the percentage of clay is greater than 30. Generally, areas with fine to moderately fine soils are prevalent should not be considered as sites, because these soils do not have a high infiltration rate. Soils with greater than 40 percent combined silt/clay also should not be used. A series of soil cores should be taken to a depth of at least 5 feet below the proposed basin floor elevation to determine which kinds of soils are prevalent at the potential site.
3. *Volume.* Calculate the volume of stormwater to be mitigated by the infiltration basin using the Methods of Chapter 9.
4. *Slope.* The basin floor should be as flat as possible to ensure an even infiltration surface and should not be or greater than 5 percent slope. Also, side slopes should have a maximum slope of 3 horizontal to 1 vertical (Schueler, 1987).
5. *Vegetation.* Vegetation should be established as soon as possible. Water-tolerant reed canary grass or tall fescue should be planted on the floor and side slopes of the basin (Schueler, 1987). Root penetration and thatch formation maintains and sometimes improves infiltration capacity of the basin floor. Also, the vegetation helps to trap the pollutants by growing through the accumulated sediment and preventing resuspension.

The vegetation also helps reduce pollution levels by taking up soluble nutrients for growth and converting them into less available pollutant forms.

6. *Inlet.* Sediment forebays or riprap aprons should be installed to reduce flow velocities and trap sediments upon entrance to the basin. Flow should be evenly distributed over the basin floor by a riprap apron. The inlet pile or channel should enter the basin at floor level to prevent erosion (Schueler, 1987).
7. *Drainage Time.* The basin should completely drain within 24 hours to avoid the risk of it not being empty before the next storm. Overestimation of the future infiltration capacity can result in a standing water problem. Ponds with detention times of less than six hours are not effectively removing pollutants from the storm flows (Schueler, 1987). The most common problem is setting the elevation and size of the low-flow orifice. If the orifice is too large, runoff events pass through the basin too quickly. If the low-flow orifice diameter is too narrow, there is a risk of creating an undesirable quasi-permanent pool.
8. *Buffer Zone.* A 25 foot buffer should be placed between the edge of the basin floor, and the nearest adjacent lot (Schueler, 1987). The buffer should consist of water tolerant, native plant species that provide food and cover for wildlife. This buffer zone may also act as a screen if necessary.
9. *Access.* Access to the basin floor should be provided for light equipment (Schueler, 1987).
10. *Water Table.* The basin floor should be a minimum of 10 feet above the water table.
11. *Maximum Depth.* The maximum allowable depth is equal to the infiltration rate multiplied by the maximum allowable dewatering time (24 hours).
12. *Freeboard.* A minimum of 2 feet of freeboard should be available between the spillway crest and the top of the dam (Dormann, et al., 1988).
13. *Emergency Spillway.* The emergency spillway should be able to safely pass the 100-year flood.
14. *Surface Area of the Basin Floor.* If the surface area of the basin floor is increased, the infiltration rate and quantity of runoff which can be infiltrated will be increased. Larger surface areas can also help compensate for clogging on the surface.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Inspection checklist.
- Monitoring and maintenance of underdrain systems.
- Monitoring and maintenance of vegetation.
- Monitoring and removal of sediment.
- Removal of debris from the outlet.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. L. N. Boutiette and C. L. Duerring, 1994. *Massachusetts Nonpoint Source Management Manual, The Megamanual: A Guidance Document for Municipal Officials*,

Massachusetts Department of Environmental Protection, Office of Watershed Management, Nonpoint Source Program, Boston, MA.

2. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board, Alameda, CA.

3. M. E. Dormann, J. Hartigan, and B. Maestri, 1988. *Retention, Detention, and Overland Flow for Pollutant Removal from Highway Stormwater Runoff: Interim Guidelines for Management Measures*, FHWA/RD-87/056, Federal Highway Administration, Versar, Inc., Springfield, VA.

4. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.

5. T. R. Schueler, 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs*, Department of Environmental Programs, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.

6. Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Draft BMP IN: Infiltration Facilities*, June 1999. Ventura, CA.

7. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

BMP PC – 107
INFILTRATION TRENCHES

DESCRIPTION

An infiltration trench is basically an excavated trench that has been lined with filter fabric and backfilled with stone to form an underground basin. Runoff is diverted into the trench and either infiltrates into the soil, or enters a perforated pipe underdrain and is routed to an outflow facility. The depths of an infiltration trench generally range between 3 and 8 feet (Schueler, 1987) and may change when site-specific factors are considered. Smaller trenches are used for water quality, while larger trenches can be constructed if stormwater quantity control is required (Schueler, 1987). Trenches are not usually feasible in ultra-urban or retrofit situations where the soils have low permeability or low voids (Schueler, 1992). They should be installed only after the contributing area has stabilized to minimize runoff of sediments.

Infiltration trenches and infiltration basins follow similar design logic. The differences are that the former is for small drainage areas and stores runoff out of sight, within a gravel or aggregate matrix, whereas the latter is for larger drainage areas and water is stored in a visible surface pond.

Infiltration trenches effectively remove soluble and particulate pollutants. They can provide groundwater recharge by diverting 60 to 90 percent of annual urban runoff back into the soil (Boutiette and Duerring, 1994). They are generally used for drainage areas less than 10 acres, but some references cite 5 acres as a maximum size drainage area (Schueler, 1987, 1992). Potential locations include residential lots, commercial areas, parking lots, and adjacent to road shoulders. Trenches are only feasible on permeable soils (sand and gravel), and where the water table and bedrock are situated well below the bottom of the trench (Boutiette and Duerring, 1994; Schueler, 1987). Trenches are frequently used in combination with grassed sales. Trenches should not be used to trap course sediments, because the large sediment will clog the trench. Grass buffers can be installed to capture sediment before it enters the trench.

ADVANTAGES

1. Provides groundwater recharge.
2. Trenches fit into small areas.
3. Good pollutant removal capabilities.
4. Can minimize increases in runoff volume.
5. Can fit into medians, perimeters, and other unused areas of a development site.
6. Helps replicate pre-development hydrology and increases dry weather base flow.

LIMITATIONS

1. Slope of contributing watershed needs to be less than 20 percent.
2. Soil should have infiltration rate greater than 0.3 inches per hour and clay content less than 30 percent.
3. Drainage area should be between 1 to 10 acres.
4. The bottom of infiltration trench should be at least 4 feet above the underlying bedrock and the seasonal high water table.
5. High failure rates of conventional trenches and high maintenance burden.

6. Low removal of dissolved pollutants in very coarse soils.
7. Not suitable on fill slopes or steep slopes.
8. Risk of groundwater contamination in very coarse soils, may require groundwater monitoring.
9. Infiltration facilities could fall under additional regulations of IDEM or IDNR regarding waste disposal to groundwater.
10. Cannot be located within 100 feet of drinking water wells.
11. Need to be located a minimum of 10 feet down gradient and 100 feet up gradient from building foundations because of seepage problems.
12. Should not be used if upstream sediment load cannot be controlled prior to entry into the trench.
13. Metals and petroleum hydrocarbons could accumulate in soils to potentially toxic levels.

DESIGN CRITERIA

Infiltration trenches can be categorized both by trench type, and as surface or below ground. Special inlets are required for underground trenches to prevent sediment and oil or grease from clogging the infiltration trench (Schueler, 1987). Surface trenches are commonly used where land is not limiting and underground trenches are better suited for development with minimal land availabilities.

1. *Volume.* Calculate the volume of stormwater to be mitigated by the water quality volume calculation of Chapter 9.
2. *Dimensions.* Generally, soils with low infiltration rates require a higher ratio of bottom surface area to storage volume (Northern Virginia Planning District Commission and Engineers and Surveyors Institute, 1992). The following formulas can be used to determine the dimensions of the infiltration basin:

$$H_{Tmax}=E*t_{max}/P$$

$$H_{Tmin}=E*t_{min}/P$$

$$A=V/[E*t_{max}]$$

Where:

H_{Tmax}, H_{Tmin} = Maximum and minimum trench depths (ft)

E = Infiltration rate in length per unit time (ft/hr).
t_{max}, t_{min} = Maximum and minimum target drain-time (hr)
P= Pore volume ratio of stone aggregate (% porosity/100).
V= Fluid storage volume requirement (ft^3)
A= Trench bottom surface area (ft^2).

The actual storage volume of the facility is the void ratio multiplied by the total volume of the trench. The available land and other constraints such as depth to bedrock or water table are used to determine the final dimensions of the trench.

3. *Buffer Strip/Special Inlet.* A grass filter strip a minimum of 20 feet should surround the trench on all sides over which surface flow reaches an above-ground trench. A special inlet can be used to prevent floatable material, solids, grease, and oil from entering trenches which are located below ground.
4. *Filter Fabric.* The bottom and sides of the trench should be lined with filter fabric soon after the trench is excavated. The fabric should be flush with the sides, overlap on the order of 2 feet over the seams, and not have trapped air pockets. As an alternative, 6 inches of clean, washed sand may be placed on the bottom of the trench instead of filter fabric.
5. *Grass Cover.* If the trench is grass covered, at least 1 foot of soil should be over the trench for grass substrate.
6. *Surface Area.* The surface area of the trench can be engineered to the site with the understanding that a larger surface area of the bottom of the trench increases infiltration rates and helps to reduce clogging and that depth may be limited by seasonal groundwater.
7. *Surface Area of the Trench Bottom.* Pollutant removal in a trench can be improved by increasing the surface area of the trench bottom. This is done by adjusting the geometry to make the trench shallow and broad, rather than deep and narrow. Greater bottom surface area increases infiltration rates and provides more area and depth for soil filtering. In addition, broader trench bottoms reduce the risk of clogging at the soil/filter cloth interface by spreading infiltration over a wider area.
8. *Distance from Wells and Foundations.* The trench should be at least 100 feet of any drinking water supply well, and at least 10 feet down gradient and 100 feet up gradient from building foundations (Schueler, 1987).
9. *Drain Time.* The drain time should be between two and three days. The total volume of the trench should drain in 48 hours. The minimum drain time should be 24 hours.
10. *Backfill Material.* The backfill material in the trench should have a D_{50} sized between 1.5 and 3 inches and clay content should be limited to less than 30 percent. The porosity of the material should be between 0.3 and 0.4.
11. *Observation Well.* An observation well of 4 to 6 inches diameter PVC should be located in the center of the trench and the bottom should rest on a plate. The top should be capped. The water level should be measured after a storm event. If it has not completely drained in three days, some remedial work may need to be done.
12. *Overflow Berm.* A 2 to 3 inch emergency overflow berm on the downstream side of the trench serves a twofold purpose. First, it detains surface runoff and allows it to pond and infiltrate to the trench. The berm also promotes uniform sheet flow for runoff overflow.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Inspection checklist.
- Removal of debris from the capture system.

- Monitoring and removal of sediment.
- Maintenance and monitoring of vegetation.
- Sight diagram showing BMP location and associated easements and boundaries.
- Monitoring and maintenance of underdrain systems.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. L. N. Boutiette and C. L. Duerring, 1994. *Massachusetts Nonpoint Source Management Manual, The Megamanual: A Guidance Document for Municipal Officials*, Massachusetts Department of Environmental Protection, Office of Watershed Management, Nonpoint Source Program, Boston, MA.
2. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board, Alameda, CA.
3. DEQ Storm Water Management Guidelines, Department of Environmental Quality, State of Oregon. http://waterquality.deq.state.or.us/wq/groundwa/swmgmtguide.htm
4. M. E. Dormann, J. Hartigan, and B. Maestri, 1988. *Retention, Detention, and Overland Flow for Pollutant Removal from Highway Stormwater Runoff: Interim Guidelines for Management Measures*, FHWA/RD-87/056, Federal Highway Administration, Versar, Inc., Springfield, VA.
5. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.
6. *Low-Impact Development Design Manual*, November 1997. Department of Environmental Resources, Prince George's County, MD.
7. Northern Virginia Planning District Commission and Engineers Surveyors Institute, 1992. *Northern Virginia BMP Handbook, A Guide to Planning and Designing Best Management Practices in Northern Virginia*, Annandale, VA.
8. T. R. Schueler, 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs*, Department of Environmental Programs, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.
9. T. R. Schueler, P. Kumble, and M. Heraty, 1992. *A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices: Techniques for Reducing Nonpoint Source Pollution in the Coastal Zone*, Anacostia Research Team, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.
10. Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Draft BMP IN: Infiltration Facilities*, June 1999. Ventura, CA.
11. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

BMP PC – 108
MEDIA FILTRATION

DESCRIPTION OF SAND FILTERS

Media filters are two-stage constructed treatment systems, including a pretreatment settling basin and a filter bed containing sand or other filter media. Various types of sand filter designs have been developed and implemented successfully in space-limited areas. The filters are not designed to treat the entire storm volume but rather the water quality volume (Chapter 9), that tends to contain higher pollutant levels. Sand filters can be designed so that they receive flow directly from the surface (via inlets or even as sheet flow directly onto the filter bed) or via storm drain pipes. They can be exposed to the surface or completely contained in underground pipe systems or vaults.

While there are various designs, most intermittent sand filters contain four basic components, as shown schematically in Figure 10-5 and discussed below:

1. *Diversion Structure.* Either incorporated into the filter itself or as a stand-alone device, the diversion structure isolates the WQV and routes it to the filter. Larger volumes are bypassed directly to the storm drain system.
2. *Sedimentation Chamber.* Important to the long-term successful operation of any filtration system is the removal of large grained sediments prior to exposure to the filter media. The sedimentation chamber is typically integrated directly into the sand filter BMP but can also be a stand-alone unit if space permits.
3. *Filter Media.* Typically consists of a 1-inch gravel layer over an 18 to 24 inch layer of washed sand. A layer of geotextile fabric can be placed between the gravel and sand layers.
4. *Underdrain System.* Below the filter media is a gravel bed, separated from the sand by a layer of geotextile fabric, in which is placed a series of perforated pipes. The treated runoff is routed out of the BMP to the storm sewer system or another BMP.

ADVANTAGES

1. May require less space than other treatment control BMPs and can be located underground.
2. Does not require continuous base flow.
3. Suitable for individual developments and small tributary areas up to 100 acres.
4. Does not require vegetation.
5. Useful in watersheds where concerns over groundwater quality or site conditions prevent use of infiltration.
6. High pollutant removal capability.
7. Can be used in highly urbanized settings.
8. Can be designed for a variety of soils.
9. Ideal for aquifer regions.

LIMITATIONS

1. Given that the amount of available space can be a limitation that warrants the consideration of a sand filter BMP, designing one for a large drainage area where there is room for more conventional structures may not be practical.
2. Available hydraulic head to meet design criteria.

3. Requires frequent maintenance to prevent clogging.
4. Not effective at removing liquid and dissolved pollutants.
5. Severe clogging potential if exposed soil surfaces exist upstream.
6. Sand filters may need to be placed offline to protect it during extreme storm events.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. *Treatment Rate.* Calculate the flow rate of stormwater to be mitigated by the media filtration according to the method in Chapter 9.
2. *Surface area of the filter.* The following equation is for a maximum filtration time of 24 hours:

A. Surface Systems or Vaults

Filter area (ft2) = 3630SuAH/K(D+H)

Where: Su = unit storage (inches-acre)
A = area in acres draining to facility
H = depth (ft) of the sand filter
D = average water depth (ft) over the filter taken to be one-half the difference between the top of the filter and the maximum water surface elevation
K = filter coefficient recommended as 3.5

This equation is appropriate for filter media sized at a diameter of 0.02 to 0.04 inches. The filter area must be increased if a smaller media is used.

B. Underground Sandfilter Systems

a. Compute the required size of the sand filter bed surface area, AF. The following equation is based on Darcy's law and is used to size the sand filter bed area:

AF (ft2) = 24(WQV)(df)/ [k (hf + df) tf]
Where: Af = sand filter bed surface area (ft2)
WQV = Water quality treatment volume (ft3)
df = sand filter bed depth (ft)
k = filter coefficient recommended as 3.5 (ft/day)
hf = average height of water above the sand bed (ft)= hmax/2
hmax = elevation difference between the invert of the inlet pipe and the top of the sand filter bed (ft)
tf = time required for the runoff to filter through the sand bed (hr). (Typically 24 hr).

Note: 24 in the equation is the 24hr/day constant.

b. Choose a pipe size (diameter). The selection of pipe size should be based on site parameters such as: elevation of the runoff coming into the sand filter system, elevation of downstream connection to which the sand filter system outlet must tie into, and the minimum cover requirements for live loads. A minimum of 5' clearance should be provided between the top of the inner pipe wall and the top of the filter media for maintenance purpose. Use:

D = d + 5

Where:
D = pipe diameter (ft)
d = depth of sand filter and underdrain pipe media depth (ft)
= dg + df
dg = underdrain pipe media depth = 0.67’
df = sand filter bed depth (ft): 1.5 to 2.0 feet

c. Compute the sand filter width (based on the pipe geometry):

$$Wf = 2\ [R^2 - (R - d)^2\ ]^{0.5}$$

Where:

Wf = filter width (ft)
R = pipe radius (ft) = D/2

d. Compute the filter length:
Lf = Af/ Wf

Where:
Lf = filter length (ft)

3. *Configuration*

A. Surface sand filter

Criteria for the settling basin:
a. For the outlet use a perforated riser pipe.
b. Size the outlet orifice for a 24 hour drawdown
c. Energy dissipater at the inlet to the settling basin.
d. Trash rack at outlets to the filter.
e. Vegetate slopes to the extent possible.
f. Access ramp (4:1 or less) for maintenance vehicles.
g. One foot of freeboard.
h. Length to width ratio of at least 3:1 and preferably 5:1.
i. Sediment trap at inlet to reduce resuspension.

Criteria for the filter:
a. Use a flow spreader.
b. Use clean sand 0.02 to 0.04 inch diameter.
c. Some have placed geofabric on sand surface to facilitate maintenance.
d. Underdrains with:
- Schedule 40 PVC.
- 4 inch diameter.
- 3/8 inch perforations placed around the pipe, with 6 inch space between each perforation cluster.
- maximum 10 foot spacing between laterals.- minimum grade of 1/8 inch per foot.

B. Underground sand filter

Criteria for the settling tank (if required).
a. Use orifice and/or weir structure for the outlet.
b. Size the outlet orifice or weir for a 24 hour drawdown time

c. Provide access manhole for maintenance.

Criteria for the filter.
a. Use a flow spreader.
b. Use clean sand 0.02 to 0.04 inch diameter.
c. Some have placed geofabric on sand surface to facilitate maintenance.
d. Underdrains with:
- Schedule 40 PVC.
- 4 inch diameter
- 3/8 inch perforations placed around the pipe, with 6 inch space between each perforation cluster.
e. Provide access manhole for maintenance.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Inspection checklist.
- Removal of debris from the capture system.
- Monitoring and maintenance of filter media.
- Sight diagram showing BMP location and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board. Alameda, CA.
2. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.
3. B. R. Urbonas, January/February 1999. *Design of a Sand Filter for Stormwater Quality Enhancement*, Water Environment Research, Volume 71, Number 1. Denver, CO.
4. Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Draft BMP MF: Media Filters*, June 1999. Ventura, CA.
5. Northern Virginia BMP Handbook, City of Alexandria Virginia, February 1992. Alexandria, VI.
6. US EPA, Developments in Sand Filter Technology to Improve Runoff Quality, www.epa.gov/owowwtr1/NPS/wpt/wpt02/wpt02fa2.html.
7. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

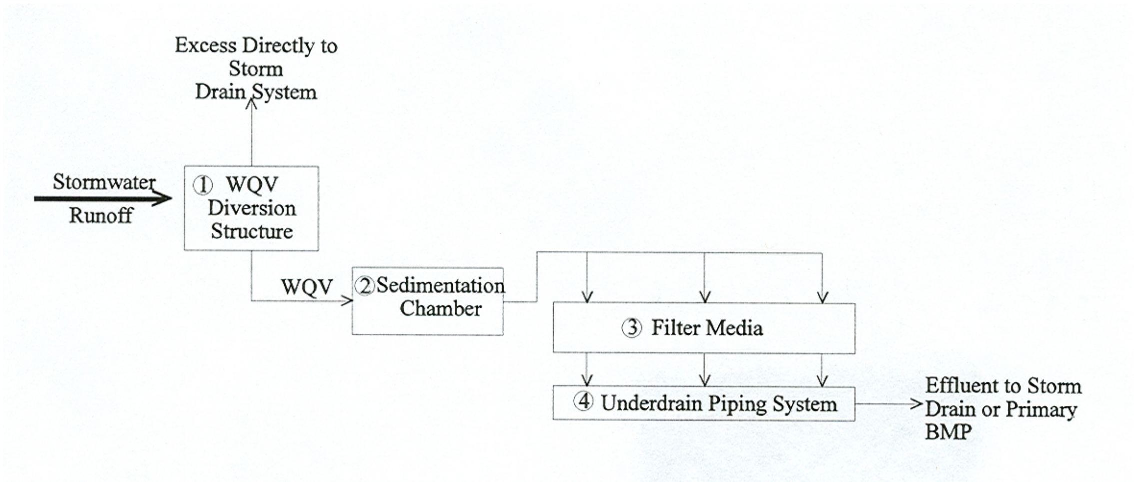


Figure PC-108A
Typical Media Filtration Schematic (SUSMP, 2002)

BMP PC – 109
STORM DRAIN INSERTS

DESCRIPTION

Storm drain inserts can be a variety of devices that are used in storm drain conveyance systems to reduce pollutant loadings in stormwater runoff. Most storm drain inserts reduce oil and grease, debris, and suspended solids through gravity, centrifugal force, or other methods. BMPs such as these can be particularly useful in areas susceptible to spills of petroleum products, such as gas stations. Figure 10-6 illustrates one of many different types of storm drain inserts. Trapped sediments and floatable oils must be pumped out regularly to maintain the effectiveness of the units.

ADVANTAGES

1. Prefabricated for different standard storm drain designs.
2. Require minimal space to install.

LIMITATIONS

1. Some devices may be vulnerable to accumulated sediments being resuspended during heavy storms.
2. Can only handle limited amounts of sediment and debris.
3. Maintenance and inspection of storm drain inserts are required before and after each rainfall event.
4. High maintenance costs.
5. Hydraulic losses.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. Calculate the minimum flow rate to be mitigated by the storm drain insert using the methods of Chapter 9.
2. Select unit which meets 80% TSS removal for design flow rate.
3. Provide an overflow to bypass flows greater than the water quality treatment rate.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Inspection checklist
- Removal of debris from the insert.
- Maintenance of insert filter material.
- Maintenance of special filters such as carbon socks.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. Center for Watershed Protection, Environmental Quality Resources and Loiederman Associates. 1997. *Maryland Stormwater Design Manual*. Prepared for: Maryland Department of the Environment. Baltimore, MD.
2. DEQ Storm Water Management Guidelines, Department of Environmental Quality, State of Oregon.
http://waterquality.deq.state.or.us/wq/groundwa/swmgmtguide.htm
3. K. H. Lichten, June 1997. *Compilation of New Development Stormwater Treatment Controls in the San Francisco Bay Area*, Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, San Francisco, CA.
4. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

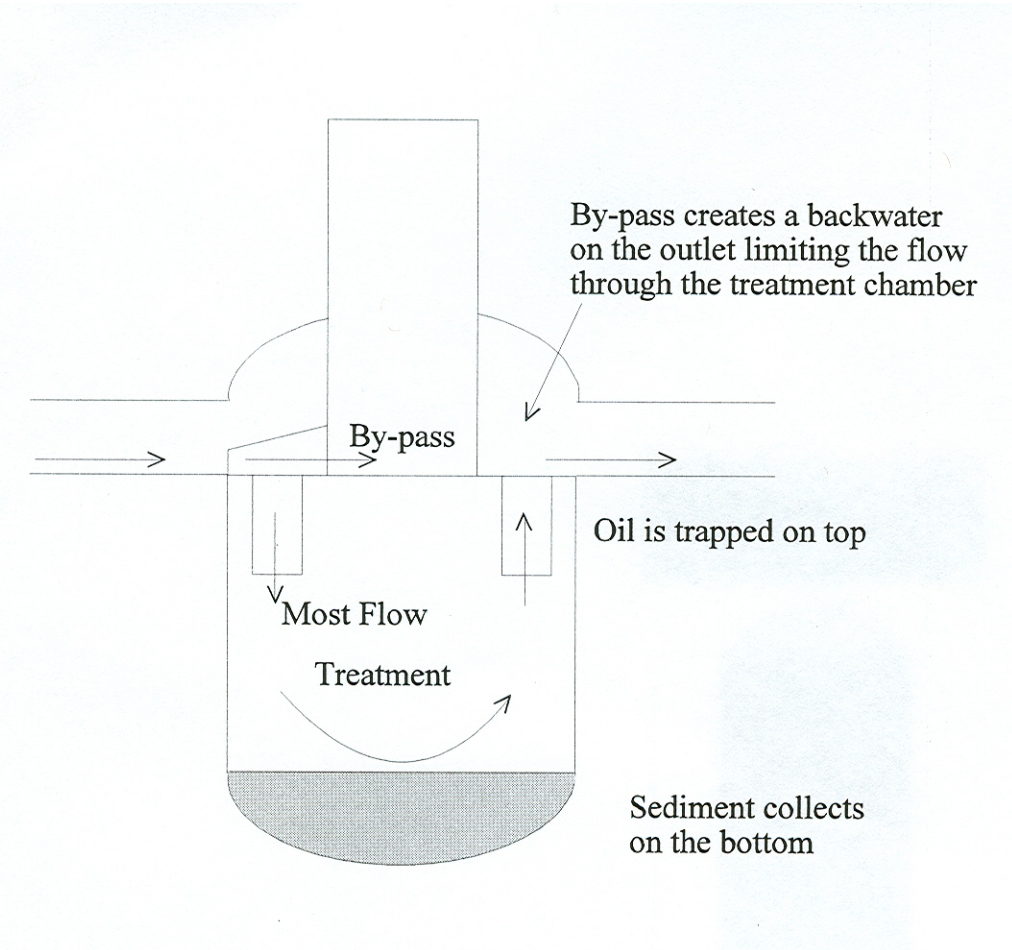


Figure PC-109A
Typical Storm Insert Schematic (SUSMP, 2002)

BMP PC – 110
VEGETATION FILTER STRIPS

DESCRIPTION

Vegetated filter strips, also known as vegetated buffer strips, are vegetated sections of land similar to grassed swales, except they are essentially flat with low slopes, and are designed only to accept runoff overland sheet flow (Schueler, 1992). They may appear in any vegetated form from grassland to forest, and are designed to intercept upstream flow, lower flow velocity, and spread water out as sheet flow (Schueler, 1992). The dense vegetative cover facilitates conventional pollutant removal through detention, filtration by vegetation, and infiltration into soil (Yu and Kaighn, 1992). Wooded and grass filter strips have slightly higher removal rates. Dissolved nutrient removal for either type of vegetative cover is usually poor, however wooded strips show slightly higher removal due to increased retention and sequestration by the plant community (Florida Department of Transportation, 1994).

Although an inexpensive control measure, they are most useful in contributing watershed areas where peak runoff velocities are low, as they are unable to treat the high flow velocities typically associated with high impervious cover (Barret, et al., 1993). Similar to grassed swales, filter strips can last for 10 to 20 years with proper conditions and regular maintenance. Life expectancy is significantly diminished if uniform sheet flow and dense vegetation are not maintained.

ADVANTAGES

1. Lowers runoff velocity (Schueler, 1987).
2. Slightly reduces runoff volume (Schueler, 1987).
3. Slightly reduces watershed imperviousness (Schueler, 1987).
4. Slightly contributes to groundwater recharge (Schueler, 1987).
5. Aesthetic benefit of vegetated “open spaces” (Colorado Department of Transportation, 1992).
6. Preserves the character of riparian zones, prevents erosion along streambanks, and provides excellent urban wildlife habitat (Schueler, 1992).

LIMITATIONS

1. Filter strips cannot treat high velocity flows, and do not provide enough storage or infiltration to effectively reduce peak discharges to predevelopment levels for design storms (Schueler, 1992). This lack of quantity control dictates use in rural or low density development.
2. Requires slope less than 5%.
3. Requires low to fair permeability of natural subsoil.
4. Large land requirement.
5. Often concentrates water, which significantly reduces effectiveness.
6. Pollutant removal is unreliable in urban settings.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. Successful performance of filter strips relies heavily on maintaining shallow non-concentrated flow (Colorado Department of Transportation, 1992). To avoid flow channelization and maintain performance, a filter strip should:

   (1) Be equipped with a level spreading device for even distribution of runoff,
   (2) Contain dense vegetation with a mix of erosion resistant, soil binding species,
   (3) Be graded to a uniform, even and relatively low slope,

(4) Laterally traverse the contributing runoff area (Schueler, 1987),

(5) The area to be used for the strip should be free of gullies or rills that can concentrate overland flow (Schueler, 1987),

(6) Filters strip should be placed 3 to 4 feet from edge of pavement to accommodate a vegetation free zone (Washington State Department of Transportation, 1995). The top edge of the filter strip along the pavement should be designed to avoid the situation where runoff would travel along the top of the filter strip, rather than through it. Dilhalla, et al., (1986) suggest that berms be placed at 50 to 100 feet intervals perpendicular to the top edge of the strip to prevent runoff from bypassing it (as cited in Washington State Department of Transportation, 1995),

(7) Top edge of the filter strip should follow the same elevation contour. If a section of the edge of the strip dips below the contour, runoff will tend to form a channel toward the low spot,

(8) Filter strips should be landscaped after other portions of the project are completed (Washington State Department of Transportation, 1995). However, level spreaders and strips used as sediment control measures during the construction phase can be converted to permanent controls if they can be regraded and reseeded to the top edge of the strip.

2. Filter strips can be used on an up gradient from watercourses, wetlands, or other water bodies, along toes and tops of slopes, and at outlets of other stormwater management structures (Boutiette and Duerring, 1994). They should be incorporated into street drainage and master drainage planning (Urbonas, 1992). The most important criteria for selection and use of this BMP are soils, space, and slope, where:

(1) *Soils and moisture are adequate to grow relatively dense vegetative stands.* Underlying soils should be of low permeability so that the majority of the applied water discharges as surface runoff. The range of desirable permeability is between 0.06 to 0.6 inches/hour (Horner, 1985). Common soil textural classes are clay, clay loam, and silty clay. The presence of clay and organic matter in soils improves the ability of filter strips to remove pollutants from the surface runoff (Schueler, 1992). Greater removal of soluble pollutants can be achieved where the water table is within 3 feet of the surface (i.e., within the root zone) (Schueler, 1992). Filter strips function most effectively where the climate permits year-round dense vegetation.

(2) *Sufficient space is available.* Because filter strip effectiveness depends on having an evenly distributed sheet flow, the size of the contributing area and the associated volume runoff have to be limited (Urbonas, 1992). To prevent concentrated flows from forming, it is advisable to have each filter strip serve a contributing area of five acres or less (Schueler, 1987). When used alone, filter strip application is in areas where impervious cover is low to moderate and where there are small fluctuations in peak flow.

(3) *Longitudinal slope is five percent or less.* When filter strips are used on steep or unstable slopes, the formation of rills and gullies can disrupt sheet flow (Urbonas, 1992). As a result filter strips will not function at all on slopes greater than 15 percent and may have reduced effectiveness on slopes between 6 to 15 percent.

3. The design should be based on the same methods detailed for swales. The referred geometry of a filter strip is rectangular, and this should be used when applying the design procedures of vegetated swales.

4. The following provisions apply specifically to filter strips (Horner, 1993):

(1) Slopes should be no greater than 15 percent and should preferably be lower than 5 percent, and be uniform throughout the strip after final grading.

(2) Hydraulic residence time normally no less than 9 minutes, and in no case

less than 5 minutes.

(3) Average velocity no greater than 0.9 feet/second.

(4) Manning's friction factor (*n*) of 0.02 should be used for grassed strips, *n* of 0.024 if strip is infrequently mowed, or a selected higher value if the strip is wooded.

(5) The width should be no greater than that where a uniform flow distribution can be assured.

(6) **Average depth of flow (design depth) should be no more than 0.5 inches.**

(7) Hydraulic radius is taken to be equal to the design flow depth.

(8) A minimum of 8 feet is recommended for filter strip width.

5. Filter strips function best with longitudinal slopes less than 10 percent, and ideally less than 5 percent. As filter strip length becomes shorter, slope becomes more influential. Therefore, when a minimum strip length of 20 feet is utilized, slopes should be graded as close to zero as drainage permits (Schueler, 1987). With steeper slopes, terracing through using landscape timber, concrete weirs, or other means may be required to maintain sheet flow.

6. Calculate the flow rate of stormwater to be mitigated by the vegetated filter strip using the Method outlined in Chapter 9.

7. Another design issue is runoff collection and distribution to the strip, and release to a transport system or receiving water (Horner, 1985). Flow spreader devices should be used to introduce the flow evenly to the filter strip (Urbonas, 1992). Concentrated flow needs to use a level spreader to evenly distribute flow onto a strip. There are many alternative spreader devices, with the main consideration being that the overland flow spreader be distributed equally across the strip. Level spreader options include porous pavement strips, stabilized turf strips, slotted curbing, rock-filled trench, concrete sills, or plastic-lined trench that acts as a small detention pond (Yu and Kaighn, 1992). The outflow and filter side lip of the spreader should have a zero slope to ensure even runoff distribution (Yu and Kaighn, 1992). Once in the filter strip, most runoff from significant events will not be infiltrated and will require a collection and conveyance system. Grass-lined swales are often used for this purpose and can provide another BMP level. A filter strip can also drain to a storm sewer or street gutter (Urbonas, 1992).

8. Filter strips should be constructed of dense, soil-binding deep-rooted water resistant plants. For grassed filter strips, dense turf is needed to promote sedimentation and entrapment, and to protect against erosion (Yu and Kaighn, 1992). Turf grass should be maintained to a blade height of 2 to 4 inches. Most engineered, sheet-flow systems are seeded with specific grasses. The grass species chosen should be appropriate for the climatic conditions and maintenance criteria for each project.

9. Trees and woody vegetation have been shown to increase infiltration and improve performance of filter strips. Trees and shrubs provide many stormwater management benefits by intercepting some rainfall before it reaches the ground, and improving infiltration and retention through the presence of a spongy, organic layer of materials that accumulates underneath the plants (Schueler, 1987). As discussed previously in this section, wooded strips have shown significant increases in pollutant removal over grass strips. Maintenance for wooded strips is virtually non-existent, another argument for using trees and shrubs. However, there are drawbacks to using woody plants. Since the density of the vegetation is not as great as a turf grass cover, wooded filter strips need additional length to accommodate more vegetation. In addition, shrub and tree trunks can cause uneven distribution of sheet flow, and increase the possibility for development of gullies and channels. Consequently, wooded strips require flatter slopes than a typical grass cover strip to ensure that the presence of heavier plant stems will not facilitate channelization.

BMP PC – 110
VEGETATION FILTER STRIPS

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

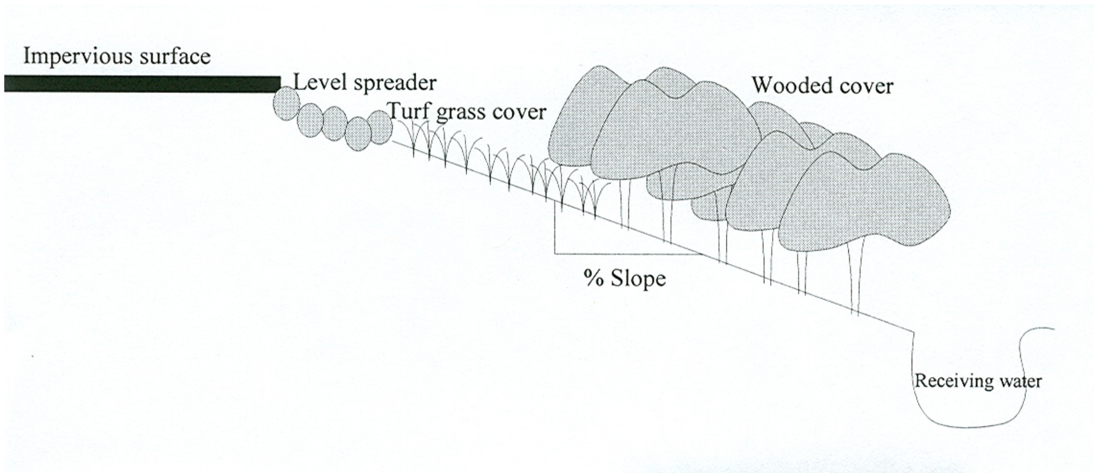
- Removal of debris from the capture system.
- Monitoring and re-establishment of vegetation.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. M. E. Barret, R. D. Zuber, E. R. Collins, J. F. Malina, R. J. Charbeneau, and G. H. Ward, 1993. *A Review and Evaluation of Literature Pertaining to the Quantity and Control of Pollution from Highway Runoff and Construction*, Center for Research in Water Resources, Bureau of Engineering Research, University of Texas at Austin, Austin, TX.
2. L. N. Boutiette and C. L. Duerring, 1994. *Massachusetts Nonpoint Source Management Manual, The Megamanual: A Guidance Document for Municipal Officials*, Massachusetts Department of Environmental Protection, Office of Watershed Management, Nonpoint Source Program, Boston, MA.
3. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board, Alameda, CA.
4. Colorado Department of Transportation, 1992, *Erosion Control and Stormwater Quality Guide*, Colorado Department of Transportation.
5. DEQ Storm Water Management Guidelines, Department of Environmental Quality, S t a t e o f O r e g o n .
http://waterquality.deq.state.or.us/wq/groundwa/swmgmtguide.htm
6. Florida Department of Transportation, 1994. *Water Quality Impact Evaluation Manual Training*, Course No. BT-05-0009, Florida Department of Transportation.
7. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.
8. R. R. Horner, 1993. *Biofiltration for Storm Runoff Water Quality Control*, prepared for the Washington State Department of Ecology, Center for Urban Water Resources Management, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.
9. R. R. Horner, 1985. *Highway Runoff Water Quality Research Implementation Manual*, Volumes 1 and 2, Federal Highway Administration, WA-RD 72.2, Department of Civil Engineering, FX-10, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.
10. Indiana County Conservation District. *Controlling Sediment Pollution from Light Duty Grave/Dirt Roads*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Bureau of Land and Water Conservation and Indiana County Conservation District, PA.
11. *Low-Impact Development Design Manual*, November 1997. Department of Environmental Resources, Prince George's County, MD.
12. T. R. Schueler, 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs*, Department of Environmental Programs, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.

13. T. R. Schueler, P. Kumble, and M. Heraty, 1992. *A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices: Techniques for Reducing Nonpoint Source Pollution in the Coastal Zone*, Anacostia Research Team, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.
14. B. R. Urbonas, J. T. Doerfer, J. Sorenson, J. T. Wulliman, and T. Fairley, 1992. *Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 3 - Best Management Practices, Stormwater Quality, Urban Drainage and Flood Control District*, Denver, CO.
15. Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Draft BMP BF: Biofilters*, June 1999. Ventura, CA.
16. Washington State Department of Transportation, 1995. *Highway Runoff Manual*, Washington State Department of Transportation.
17. S. L. Yu,S. L. Kaighn, 1992. *VDOT Manual of Practice for Planning Stormwater Management*, Federal Highway Administration, FHWA/VA-R13, Virginia Department of Transportation Research Council, Charlottesville,

BMP PC – 110
VEGETATION FILTER STRIPS



VA.

Figure PC-110A
Typical Buffer Strip (SUSMP, 2002)

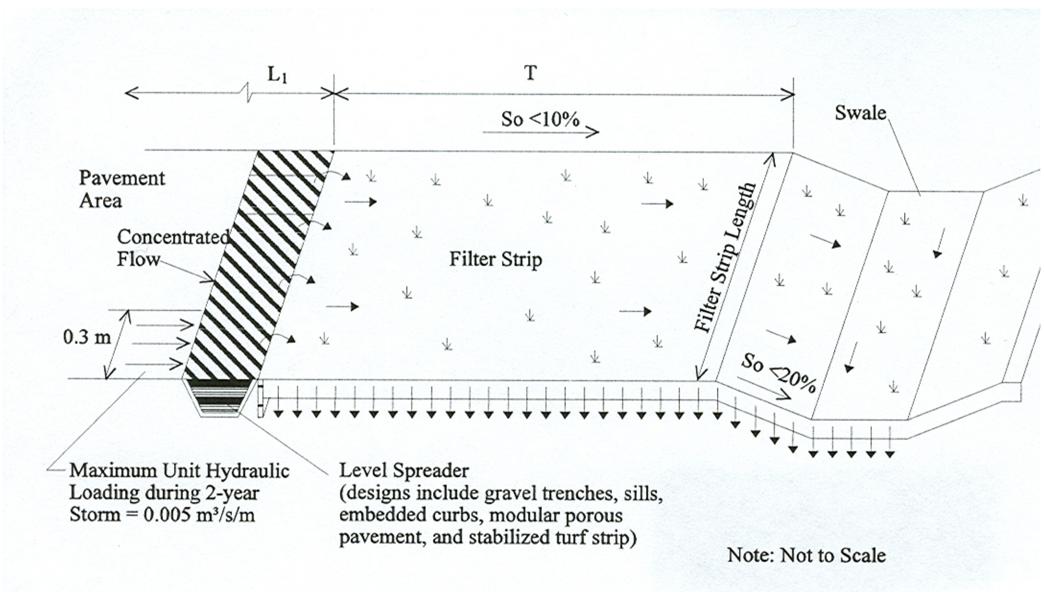


Figure PC-110B
Typical Buffer Strip Schematic (SUSMP, 2002)

BMP PC – 111
VEGETATIVE SWALE / BIOSWALE

DESCRIPTION

Vegetated swales are shallow vegetated channels to convey stormwater where pollutants are removed by filtration through grass and infiltration through soil. They look similar to, but are wider than, a ditch that is sized only to transport flow. They require shallow slopes and soils that drain well. Grassed swale designs have achieved mixed performance in pollutant removal efficiency. Moderate removal rates have been reported for suspended solids and metals associated with particulates such as lead and zinc. Runoff waters are typically not detained long enough to effectively remove very fine suspended solids, and swales are generally unable to remove significant amounts of dissolved nutrients. Pollutant removal capability is related to channel dimensions, longitudinal slope, and type of vegetation. Optimum design of these components will increase contact time of runoff through the swale and improve pollutant removal rates. Vegetated swales are primarily stormwater conveyance systems. They can provide sufficient control under light to moderate runoff conditions, but their ability to control large storms is limited. Therefore, they are most applicable in low to moderate sloped areas as an alternative to ditches and curb and gutter drainage. Their performance diminishes sharply in highly urbanized settings. Vegetated swales are often used as a pretreatment measure for other downstream BMPs, particularly infiltration devices. Enhanced vegetative swales utilize check dams and wide depressions to increase runoff storage and promote greater settling of pollutants.

ADVANTAGES

1. Relatively easy to design, install and maintain.
2. Vegetated areas that would normally be included in the site layout, if designed for appropriate flow patterns, may be used as a vegetated swale.
3. Relatively inexpensive.
4. Vegetation is usually pleasing to residents.

LIMITATIONS

1. Irrigation may be necessary to maintain vegetative cover.
2. Potential for mosquito breeding areas.
3. Possibility of erosion and channelization over time.
4. Requires dry soils with good drainage and high infiltration rates for better pollutant removal.
5. Not appropriate for pollutants toxic to vegetation.
6. Large area requirements may make this BMP infeasible for some sites.
7. Used to serve sites less than 10 acres in size, with slopes no greater than 5 percent.
8. The seasonal high water table should be at least 2 feet below the surface.
9. Buildings should be at least 10 feet from the top of bank

DESIGN CRITERIA

Several criteria should be kept in mind when beginning swale design. These provisions, presented below, have been developed through a series of evaluative research conducted on swale performance.

BMP PC – 111
VEGETATIVE SWALE / BIOSWALE

Criteria for optimum swale performance (Horner, 1993)		
Parameter	***Optimal Criteria***	***Minimum Criteria****
Hydraulic Residence Time	9 min	5 min
Average Flow Velocity	≤0.9 ft/s	***N/A***
Swale Width	8 ft	2 ft
Swale Length	200 ft	100 ft
Swale Slope	2 - 6%	1%
Side Slope Ratio (horizontal:vertical)	4 : 1	2 : 1

Note: * Criteria at or below minimum values can be used when compensatory adjustments are made to the standard design. Specific guidance on implementing these adjustments will be discussed in the design section.

The procedures described below were set forth by Horner, and unless otherwise cited, are set forth in *Biofiltration for Stormwater Runoff Quality Control*, published in 1993. The following steps are recommended to be conducted in order to complete a swale design:

(1) Determine the flow rate to the system.
(2) Determine the slope of the system.
(3) Select a swale shape (skip if filter strip design).
(4) Determine required channel width.
(5) Calculate the cross-sectional area of flow for the channel.
(6) Calculate the velocity of channel flow.
(7) Calculate swale length.
(8) Select swale location based on the design parameters.
(9) Select a vegetation cover for the swale.
(10) Check for swale stability.

Recommended procedures for each task are discussed in detail below.

1. *Determine Flow Rate to the System.* Calculate the flow rate of stormwater to be mitigated by the vegetated swale using the methods outlined in Chapter 9. Runoff from larger events should be designed to bypass the swale, consideration must be given to the control of channel erosion and destruction of vegetation. A stability analysis for larger flows (up to the 100-yr 24-hour) must be performed. If the flow rate approaches or exceeds 1 ft3/s, one or more of the design criteria above may be violated, and the swale system may not function correctly (Washington State Department of Transportation, 1995). Alternative measures to lower the design flow should be investigated. Possibilities include dividing the flow among several swales, installing detention to control release rate upstream, and reducing developed surface area to reduce runoff coefficient value and gain space for biofiltration (Horner, 1993).
2. *Determine the Slope of the System.* The slope of the swale will be somewhat dependent on where the swale is placed, but should be between the stated criteria of one and six percent.
3. *Select a Swale Shape.* Normally, swales are designed and constructed in a trapezoidal shape, although alternative designs can be parabolic, rectangular, and triangular. Trapezoidal cross-sections are preferred because of relatively wider vegetative areas and ease of maintenance (Khan, 1993). They also avoid the sharp corners present in V-shaped and rectangular swales, and offer better stability than the vertical walls of rectangular swales.

4. *Determine Required Channel Width.* Estimates for channel width for the selected shape can be obtained by applying Manning's Equation:

$$Q = \frac{1.486}{n} AR^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

Where:
Q = Flow (ft3/s).
A = Cross-sectional area of flow (ft2).
Rh = Hydraulic radius of flow cross section (ft).
S = Longitudinal slope of biofilter (ft/ft).
n = Manning's roughness coefficient.

A Manning's n value of 0.02 is used for routine swales that will be mowed with some regularity. For swales that are infrequently mowed, use a Manning's n value of 0.024. A higher n value can be selected if it is known that vegetation will be very dense (Khan, 1993).

Because the channel is wide, the hydraulic radius approaches the flow depth. Substituting the geometric equations for a trapezoidal channel into Manning's equation, the bottom width (w_b) and the top width (w_t) for the trapezoid swale can be computed using the following equations:

$$w_b = \frac{Qn}{1.486 y^{1.67} S^{0.5}} - Zy \quad \text{and} \quad w_t = w_b + 2Zy$$

Where:
Q = Flow rate in ft3/s.
n = Manning's roughness coefficient
y = Depth of flow.
Z = The side slope in the form of Z:1.

Typically, the depth of flow in the channel (H) is set at 3 to 4 inches. Flow depth can also be determined by subtracting 2 inches from the expected grass height, if the grass type and the height it will be maintained is known. Values lower than 3 to 4 inches can be used, but doing so will increase the computed width of the swale (Washington State Department of Transportation, 1995).

Swale width computed should be between 2 to 8 feet. Relatively wide swales (those wider than 8 feet are more susceptible to flow channelization and are less likely to have uniform sheet flow across the swale bottom for the entire swale length. The maximum widths for swales is on the order of 10 feet, however widths greater than 8 feet should be evaluated to consider the effectiveness of the flow spreading design used and the likelihood of maintaining evenness in the swale bottom. Since length may be used to compensate for width reduction (and vice versa) so that area is maintained, the swale width can be arbitrarily set to 8 feet to continue with the analysis.

5. *Calculate Cross-Sectional Area.* Compute the cross-sectional area (A) for the swale.

6. *Calculate the Velocity of the Channel Flow.* Channel flow velocity (U) can be computed using the continuity equation

V (ft/sec)=Q(cfs)/A(ft2)

This velocity should be less than 0.9 ft/s, a velocity that was found to cause grasses to be flattened, reducing filtration. A velocity lower than this maximum value is recommended to achieve the 9-minute hydraulic residence time criterion, particularly in shorter swales (at V = 0.9 ft/s, a 485-ft swale is needed for a 9-min residence time and a 269-ft swale for a 5-min residence time).

If the value of V suggests that a longer swale will be needed than space permits, investigate how the design flow Q can be reduced, or increase flow depth (y) and/or swale width (w_t) up to the maximum allowable values and repeat the analysis.

7. *Calculate Swale Length.* Compute the swale length (L) using the following equation:

   L=60Vtr
   Where:
   L=length required to achieve residence time
   *t*r = Hydraulic residence time (in minutes).
   V=velocity of channel flow (ft/sec)
   Use tr = 9 min for this calculation.

   If a swale length greater than the space will permit results, investigate how the design flow Q can be reduced. Increase flow depth (H) and/or swale width (w_b) up to the maximum allowable values and repeat the analysis. If all of these possibilities are checked and space is still insufficient, t can be reduced, but to no less than 5 minutes. If the computation results in L less than 100 ft, set L = 100 ft and investigate possibilities in width reduction. This is possible through recalculating V at the 100-ft length, recomputing cross-sectional area, and ultimately adjusting the swale width w_b using the appropriate equation.

8. *Select Swale Location.* Swale geometry should be maximized by the designer, using the above equations, and given the area to be utilized. If the location has not yet been chosen, it is advantageous to compute the required swale dimensions and then select a location where the calculated width and length will fit. If locations available cannot accommodate a linear swale, a wide-radius curved path can be used to gain length.

   Sharp bends should be avoided to reduce erosion potential. Regardless of when and how site selection is performed, consideration should be given to the following site criteria:

   Soil Type. Soil characteristics in the swale bottom should be conducive to grass growth. Soils that contain large amounts of clay cause relatively low permeability and result in standing water, and may cause grass to die. Where the potential for leaching into groundwater exists, the swale bottom may need to be sealed with clay to protect from infiltration into the resource. Compacted soils will need to be tilled before seeding or planting. If topsoil is required to facilitate grass seeding and growth, use 6 inches of the following recommended topsoil mix: 50 to 80 percent sandy loam, 10 to 20 percent clay, and 10 to 20 percent composted organic matter (exclude animal waste).

   Slope. The natural slope of the potential location will determine the nature and amount of regrading, or if additional measures to reduce erosion and/or increase pollutant removal are required. Swales should be graded carefully to attain uniform longitudinal and lateral slopes and to eliminate high and low spots. If needed, grade control checks should be provided to maintain the computed longitudinal slope and limit maximum flow velocity (Urbonas, 1992).

Natural Vegetation. The presence and composition of existing vegetation can provide valuable information on soil and hydrology. If wetland vegetation is present, inundated conditions may exist at the site. The presence of larger plants, trees and shrubs, may provide additional stabilization along the swale slopes, but also may shade any grass cover established. Most grasses grow best in full sunlight, and prolonged shading should be avoided. It is preferable that vegetation species be native to the region of application, where establishment and survival have been demonstrated.

9. *Select Vegetative Cover.* A dense planting of grass provides the filtering mechanism responsible for water quality treatment in swales. In addition, grass has the ability to grow through thin deposits of sediment and sand, stabilizing the deposited sediment and preventing it from being resuspended in runoff waters. Few other herbaceous plant species provide the same density and surface per unit area. Grass is by far the most effective choice of plant material in swales, however not all grass species provide optimum vegetative cover for use in swale systems. Dense turf grasses are best for vegetative cover.

   In areas of poor drainage, wetlands species can be planted for increased vegetative cover. Use wetland species that are finely divided like grass and relatively resilient. Invasive species, such as cattails, should be avoided to eliminate proliferation in the swale and downstream.

   Woody or shrubby plantings can be used for landscaping on the edge of side slopes, but not in the swale treatment area. Trees and shrubs can provide some additional stabilization, but also mature and shade the grass. In addition, leaf or needle drop can contribute unwanted nutrients, create debris jams, or interfere with waterflow through the system. If landscape plantings are to be used, selection and planting processes should be carefully planned and carried out to avoid these potential problems.

10. *Check Swale Stability.* The stability check is performed for the combination of highest expected flow and least vegetation coverage and height. Stability is normally checked for flow rate (Q) for the 100-yr, 24-h storm unless runoff from larger such events will bypass the swale. Q can be determined using the same methods mentioned for the initial design storm computation. The maximum velocity (Vmax) in ft/s, that is permissible for the vegetation type, slope, and soil conditions should be obtained.

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Removal of debris from the outlet.
- Monitoring and removal of sediment.
- Monitoring and removal of floating debris.
- Monitoring of vegetation with criteria and instruction for re-planting.
- Maintenance of underdrains.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board, Alameda, CA.
2. Colorado Department of Transportation, 1992, *Erosion Control and Stormwater Quality Guide*, Colorado Department of Transportation.
3. DEQ Storm Water Management Guidelines, Department of Environmental Quality,State of Oregon.
   http://waterquality.deq.state.or.us/wq/groundwa/swmgmtguide.htm
4. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.
5. R. R. Horner, 1993. *Biofiltration for Storm Runoff Water Quality Control*, prepared for the Washington State Department of Ecology, Center for Urban Water Resources Management, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.
6. Z. Khan, C. Thrush, P. Cohen, L. Kuzler, R. Franklin, D. Field, J. Koon, and R. Horner, 1993. *Biofiltration Swale Performance Recommendations and Design Considerations*, Washington Department of Ecology, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.
7. K. H. Lichten, June 1997. *Compilation of New Development Stormwater Treatment Controls in the San Francisco Bay Area*, Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, San Francisco, CA.
8. *Low-Impact Development Design Manual*, November 1997. Department of Environmental Resources, Prince George's County, MD.
9. T. R. Schueler, P. Kumble, and M. Heraty, 1992. *A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices: Techniques for Reducing Nonpoint Source Pollution in the Coastal Zone*, Anacostia Research Team, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.
10. B. R. Urbonas, J. T. Doerfer, J. Sorenson, J. T. Wulliman, and T. Fairley, 1992. *Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 3 - Best Management Practices, Stormwater Quality, Urban Drainage and Flood Control District*, Denver, CO.
11. Ventura Countywide Stormwater Quality Management Program, *Draft BMP BF: Biofilters*, June 1999. Ventura, CA.
12. Washington State Department of Transportation, 1995. *Highway Runoff Manual*, Washington State Department of Transportation.
13. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

BMP PC – 112
WET PONDS

DESCRIPTION

The wet pond or retention pond is a facility which removes sediment, Biochemical oxygen Demand (BOD), organic nutrients, and trace metals from stormwater runoff. This is accomplished by slowing down stormwater using an in-line permanent pool or pond effecting settling of pollutants. The wet pond is similar to a dry pond, except that a permanent volume of water is incorporated into the design. The drainage area should be such that an adequate base flow is maintained in the pond. Biological processes occurring in the permanent pond pool aid in reducing the amount of soluble nutrients present in the water, such as nitrate and ortho-phosphorus (Schueler, 1987).

The basic elements of a wet pond are shown below. A stabilized inlet prevents erosion at the entrance to the pond. It may be necessary to install energy dissipaters. The permanent pool is usually maintained at a depth between 3 and 8 ft. The shape of the pool can help improve the performance of the pond. Maximizing the distance between the inlet and outlet provides more time for mixing of the new runoff with the pond water and settling of pollutants. Overflow from the pond is released through outlet structures to discharge flows at various elevations and peak flow rates. The outfall channel should be protected to prevent erosion from occurring downstream of the outlet.

Soil conditions are important for the proper functioning of the wet pond. The pond is a permanent pool, and thus must be constructed such that the water must not be allowed to infiltrate from the permanent portion of the pool. It is difficult to form a pool in soils with high infiltration rates soon after construction. Eventually, however, deposition of silt at the bottom of the pond will help slow infiltration. If extremely permeable soils exist at the site (hydrologic soil group A or B), a geotextile or clay liner may be necessary.

ADVANTAGES

1. Wet ponds have recreational and aesthetic benefits due to the incorporation of permanent pools in the design.
2. Wet ponds offer flood control benefits in addition to water quality benefits.
3. Wet ponds can be used to handle large drainage areas.
4. High pollutant removal efficiencies for sediment, total phosphorus, and total nitrogen are achievable <u>when the volume of the permanent pool is at least three times the water quality volume</u> (the volume to be treated).
5. A wet pond removes pollutants from water by both physical and biological processes, thus they are more effective at removing pollutants than extended/dry detention basins.
6. Creation of aquatic and terrestrial habitat.

LIMITATIONS

1. Wet ponds may be feasible for stormwater runoff in residential or commercial areas with a combined drainage area greater than 20 acres but no less than 10 acres. If less than ten acres, water quality must detain a minimum of 24 hours.
2. An adequate source of water must be available to ensure a permanent pool throughout the entire year.
3. If the wet pond is not properly maintained or the pond becomes stagnant; floating debris, scum, algal blooms, unpleasant odors, and insects may appear. 4. Sediment removal is necessary every 5 to 10 years.

5. Heavy storms may cause mixing and subsequent resuspension of solids.
6. Evaporation and lowering of the water level can cause concentrated levels of salt and algae to increase.
7. Cannot be placed on steep unstable slopes.
8. Could be regulated as a wetlands or Waters of the US by IDEM.
9. Embankment may be regulated as a dam by IDNR.

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. *Hydrology*. If the device will also be used for stormwater quantity control, it will be necessary to reduce the peak flows after development to the levels described in Chapter 6.
2. *Volume*. Calculate the volume of stormwater to be mitigated by the wet pond using the water quality volume calculations in Chapter 9. The volume of the permanent pool should be 3 times this water quality volume.
3. *Pond Shape*. The pond should be long and narrow and generally shaped such that it discourages "short-circuiting." Short-circuiting occurs when storm flows by-pass the pond and do not mix well with the pool and simply by-pass the pond. Short-circuiting can be discouraged by lengthening the pond or by installing baffles which slow water down and lengthen the distance between the inlet and outlet. A length to width ratio of no less than 2:1, with 4:1 being preferred, will help minimize short circuiting. Also, the pond should gradually expand from the inlet and gradually contract toward the outlet. Several examples of ponds shaped to reduce short-circuiting are shown below.
4. *Depth*. The depth of the water quality pond is important in the design of the pond. If the pond is too shallow, sediment will be easily resuspended as a result of wind. Shallow ponds should not be used unless vegetation is adequate to stabilize the pond. If the pond is too deep, safety considerations emerge and stratification may occur, possibly causing anoxic conditions near the bottom of the pond. If the pond becomes anoxic, pollutants adsorbed to the bottom sediments may be released back to the water column. The average depth should be 3 to 6 ft, and depths of more than 8 ft should be avoided (Schueler, 1987). A littoral zone of 6 to 18 inches deep that accounts for 25 to 50 percent of the permanent pool surface for plant growth along the perimeter of the pool is recommended, the littoral shelf will also enhance safety.
5. *Vegetation.* Planting vegetation around the perimeter of the pond can have several advantages. Vegetation reduces erosion on both the side slopes and the shallow littoral areas. Vegetation located near the inlet to the pond can help trap sediments; algae growing on these plants can also filter soluble nutrients in the water column. Thicker, higher vegetation can also help hide any debris which may collect near the shoreline. Native turf-forming grasses or irrigated turf should be planted on sloped areas, and aquatic species should be planted on the littoral areas (Urbonas, et al., 1992). Vegetation can benefit wildlife and waterfowl by providing food and cover at the marsh fringe. A shallow, organic-rich marsh fringe provides an area which enables bacteria and other microorganisms to reduce organic matter and nutrients (Schueler, 1987).
6. *Side Slopes.* Gradual side slopes of a wet pond enhance safety and help prevent erosion and make it easier to establish dense vegetation. If vegetation cannot be established, the unvegetated banks will add to erosion and subsequently the sediment load. It is recommended that side slopes be no greater than 3:1. If slopes are greater than this, riprap should be used to stabilize the banks (Schueler, 1987).
7. *Hydraulic Devices*. An outlet device, typically a riser-pipe barrel system, should be designed to release runoff in excess of the water quality volume and to control storm peaks. The outlet device should still function properly when partial clogging occurs. Plans should provide details on all culverts, risers, and spillways. Calculations should depict inflow, storage, and outflow

characteristics of the design. Some frequently used design details for extending detention times in wet ponds are shown and described below (Schueler, 1987):

a. *Slotted Standpipe from Low-Flow Orifice, Inlet Control (dry pond, shallow wet pond, or shallow marsh).* An "L"-shaped PVC pipe is attached to the low-flow orifice. An orifice plate is located within the PVC pipe which internally controls the release rate. Slots or perforations are all spaced vertically above the orifice plate, so that sediment deposited around the standpipe will not impede the supply of water to the orifice plate.

b. *Negatively Sloped Pipe from River (wet ponds or shallow marshes)* This design was developed to allow for extended detention in wet ponds. The release rate is governed merely by the size of the pipe. The risk of clogging is largely eliminated by locating the opening of the pipe at least 1 ft below the water surface where it is away from floatable debris. Also, the negative slope of the pipe reduces the chance that debris will be pulled into the opening by suction. As a final defense against clogging, the orifice can be protected by wire mesh.

c. *Hooded Riser (wet ponds).* In this design, the extended detention orifice is located on the face of the riser near the top of the permanent pool elevation. The orifice is protected by wire mesh and a hood, which prevents floatable debris from clogging the orifice.

8. *Inlet and Outlet Protection.* The inlet pipe should discharge at or below the water surface of the permanent pool. If it is above the pool, an outlet energy dissipater will protect the banks and side slopes of the pond to avoid erosion. The stream channel just downstream of the pond outlet should be protected from scouring by placing riprap along the channel. Also, the slope of the outlet channel should be close to 0.5 percent. Riprap between 18 and 30 inches should be used. If the outlet pipe is less than 24 inches, 9 to 12 inches riprap may be used. Stilling basins may also be installed to reduce flow velocities at the outfall (Schueler, 1987).
9. *Forebay.* A forebay may be installed as part of the wet pond to capture sand and gravel sediment. The forebay should be easily accessible for dredging out the sediment when necessary and access to the forebay for equipment should be provided. The forebay volume should typically be 5 to 10 percent of the water quality volume. If there are multiple inlets to the detention facility, each forebay should be sized based on the portion of water quality volume attributed to the particular inlet.
10. *Emptying Time*. A 12 to 48 hour emptying time may be used for the water quality volume above the permanent pool (Urbonas, et al., 1992).
11. *Freeboard.* The pond embankment should have at least 1 ft of freeboard above the emergency spillway crest elevation (Schueler, 1987).

OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

- Removal of debris from the outlet.
- Forebay Maintenance – Monitoring and removal of accumulated sediment should be addressed. Reference to a sediment marker must be included.
- Sediment depth and monitoring of the main pond.
- Removal and maintenance of floating debris capture systems.
- Inspection Checklist(s).
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

REFERENCES

1. Camp, Dresser and McKee, Inc., Larry Walker Associates, 1993. *California Best Management Practices - Municipal*, California State Water Resources Council Board, Alameda, CA.
2. GKY and Associates, Inc. June 1996. *Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality*, Publication No. FHWA-PD-96-032. Prepared for: US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Washington, DC.
3. K. H. Lichten, June 1997. *Compilation of New Development Stormwater Treatment Controls in the San Francisco Bay Area*, Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association, San Francisco, CA.
4. T. R. Schueler, 1987. *Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs*, Department of Environmental Programs, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, DC.
5. B. R. Urbonas, J. T. Doerfer, J. Sorenson, J. T. Wulliman, and T. Fairley, 1992. *Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 3 - Best Management Practices, Stormwater Quality, Urban Drainage and Flood Control District*, Denver, CO.
6. *Manual for the Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP)*, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, September 2002.

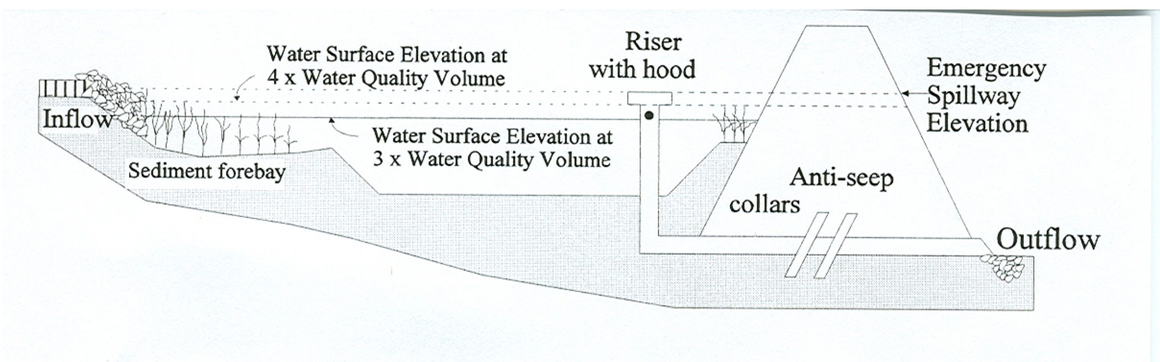


Figure PC-112A
Typical Wet Pond Components (SUSMP, 2002)

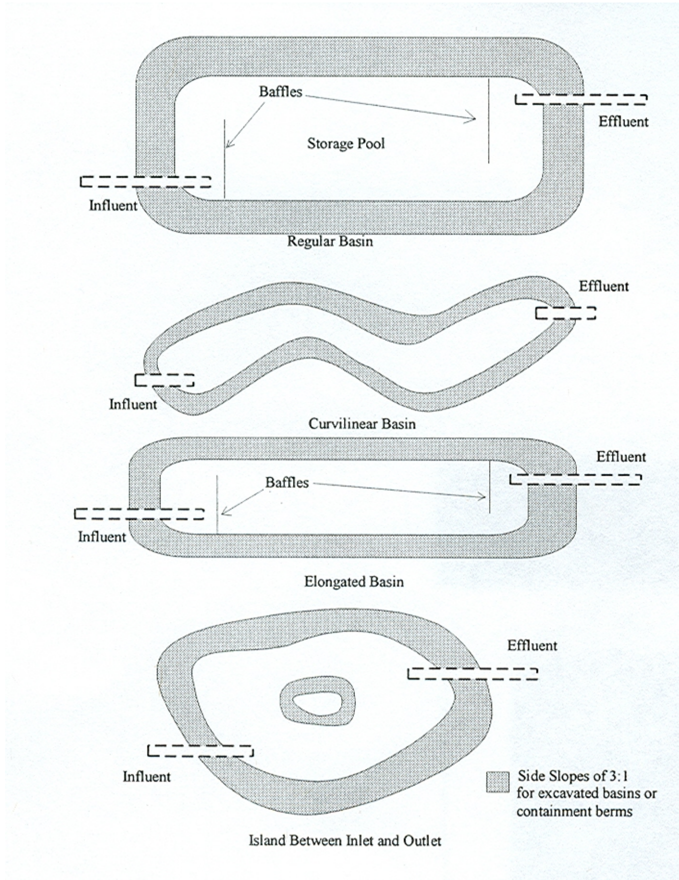


Figure PC-112B
Strategies to Increase residence time in detention facilities (SUSMP, 2002)

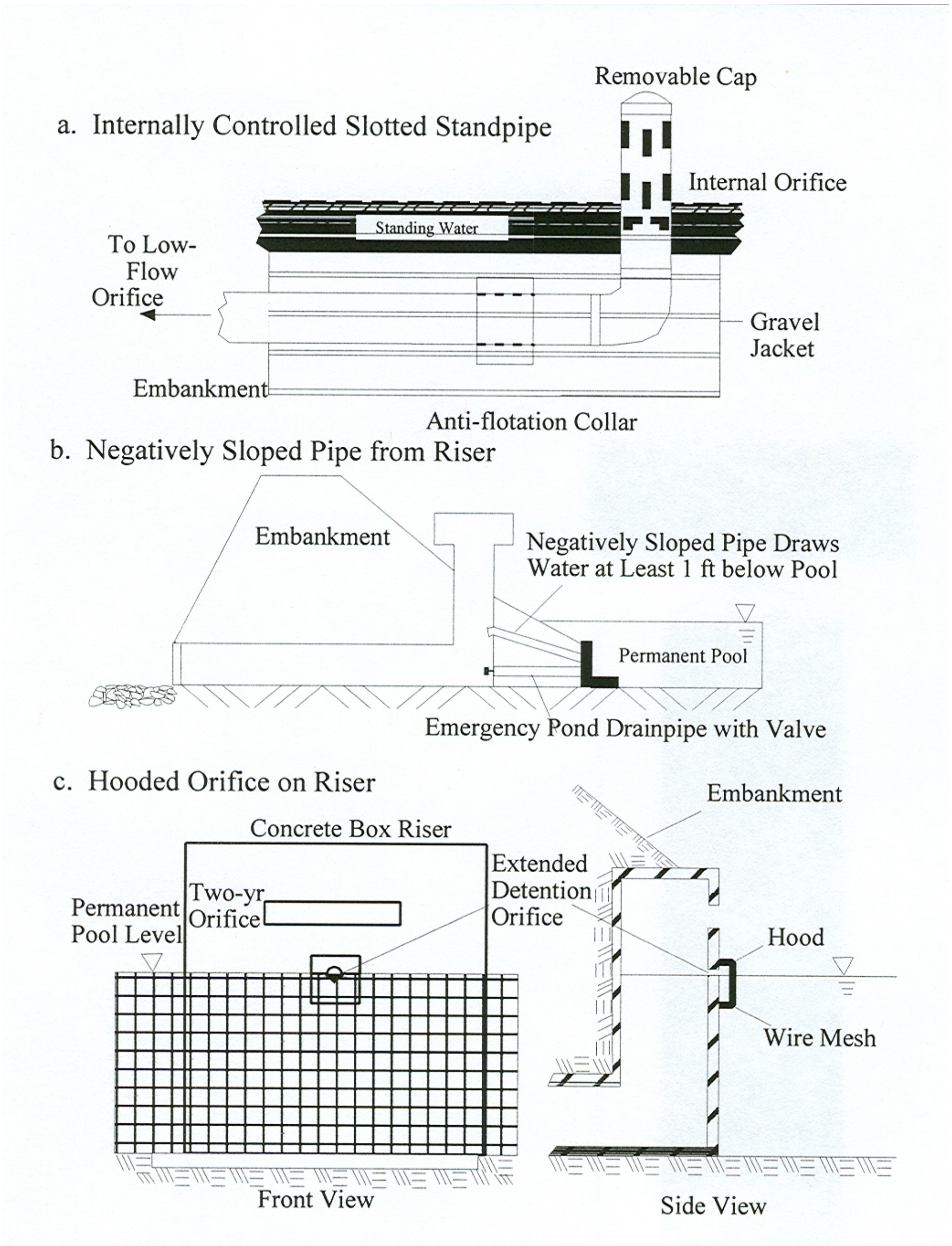


Figure PC-112C
Typical Outlet Structure Modifications to increase residence time of water quality volume (SUSMP, 2002)

BMP PC – 113

PERMEABLE PAVEMENT

DESCRIPTION

Permeable pavements infiltrate runoff through the permeable surface into the gravel subbase. Water is stored in the gravel subbase until it infiltrates the underlying soil or is carried away by an underdrain. The infiltration area and the saturated vertical infiltration rate of the native soil are used to estimate the duration of the ponding and drain-down time. The subbase depth and area can be adjusted to meet minimum detention design requirements. The gravel base and subbase must be designed in accordance with the expected traffic loads and required storage per the manual. Underdrains are placed at the top of the aggregate bed or at the bottom to minimize or prevent standing water in the structural surface. Underdrains must be designed to minimize chance of clogging and must meet detention / release rate requirements. Underdrains set above subbase invert elevations allow for retention storage and subsequent infiltration.

Design of permeable pavement systems is critical if they are to function properly and efficiently. Permeable pavements are not suited for every site. Site evaluation is critical for the success of permeable pavement. For optimal performance locate systems on well-drained permeable soils. A geotechnical report/analysis is required whenever permeable pavement is used with infiltration. It is the designer’s responsibility to collect adequate information to ensure the system functions properly. Permeable pavements should not be used with infiltration until the site soil conditions have been fully investigated.

ADVANTAGES

1. Allows for dual use of site area when space is limited.
2. Reduces storage volume for other stormwater facilities.
3. Parking surfaces may remain clear longer or clear quicker after icing conditions.
4. Provides improved water quality.

LIMITATIONS

1. Soils must be permeable when designed with infiltration. A geotechnical investigation and report are required documenting the actual infiltration rate of the soils at the proposed pervious pavement location.
2. The seasonal high water table must be below the bottom of the storage layer. The seasonal high water table must be addressed in the geotechnical report.
3. The peak storage elevation of water in the system must remain below the bottom of the permeable pavement layer for all designed storms.
4. Maximum drain-down time is 72 hours for stored water.
5. A minimum setback of storage layer from building should be provided. A minimum of 20 feet from buildings is required with additional distance provided for buildings with basements.
6. Not recommended for use in well-head protection zones without the incorporation of an impermeable liner.

7. Salt and other ice treatments should not be used on permeable pavement. Check with manufacturers for specific limitations.
8. Surface must be periodically cleaned by vacuum.

DESIGN CRITERIA

The following shouod be addressed on the plans and / or in the TIR.

1. Estimate the total storage volume and adjust area and/or depths as needed to provide required storage.
2. Assume a void ratio of approximately 35% for #8 washed stone. Other void rations must be documented in the TIR.
3. Design system with a level bottom; use a terraced system on slopes. Provide a positive slope for the bottom if the underlying soils have a high clay content or low permeability in general.
4. Maximum drain down time for the entire storage volume is 72 hours. Engineer may choose a shorter time based on site conditions and owner preference. Calculations should be included in the TIR.
5. Storage volume must not occur within porous structural surface, but must be entirely contained within stone sub-base.
6. At least one underdrain shall be used for all porous pavement systems. Additional underdrains may be required based on layout and individual site conditions.
7. A minimum of 100 feet from all wellheads should be provided. The location of all wells should be shown on the site plan sheets,
8. The dimensions of the permeable pavement should be specified on the plans as well as the proposed cross-section.
9. The plans should include signage and location addressing the use of salt and sand as well as other ice treatment limitations.

O & M MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The following should be addressed or included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual:

1. Criteria for cleaning must be stated. At a minimum, observation of water pooling on the surface requires cleaning of the pores as well as once yearly as preventative maintenance. Continued pooling after cleaning will require additional remediation.
2. Removal and maintenance of floating debris capture systems.
3. Inspection of the underdrain outfall for obstructions and integrity.
4. Inspection Checklist(s).
5. Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
6. Owner responsibility statement.
7. Right-of-Entry statement.

BMP PC – 114
GREEN ROOFS

DESCRIPTION

A green roof (vegetated roof/eco roof/roof garden) is a system consisting of waterproofing material, growing medium and vegetation. A green roof can be used in place of a traditional roof as a way to limit impervious site area and reduce stormwater runoff. The green roof design should attempt to mimic pre-developed site hydrology, reducing post-developed peak runoff rates to near pre-developed rates. Green roofs also help mitigate runoff temperatures by keeping roofs cool and retaining much of the runoff from typical storm events. Although many green roofs consist of lightweight growing medium and low-growing succulent vegetation, other more heavily planted systems are possible; in either case the design should be self-sustaining.

The structural support must be sufficient to hold the additional weight of the green roof. Greater flexibility and options are available for new buildings than for reroofing existing buildings, however retrofits are possible. For retrofit projects, an architect, structural engineer, or roof consultant can determine the condition of the existing building structure and what might be needed to support a green roof. Alterations might include additional decking, roof trusses, joists, columns, and/or foundations. Generally, the building structure must be adequate to hold an additional 15 to 25 pounds per square-foot (psf) saturated weight, depending on the vegetation and growth medium that will be used (in addition to live load requirements). An existing rock ballast roof may be structurally sufficient to hold a 10-15 psf green roof (ballast typically weigh 10-15psf).

Two additional alternatives, to the traditional bituminous roofing material, are a single ply cool roof and reflective tiles. White single ply membranes are highly reflective, as compared to traditional bituminous roofing material, and can help reduce the urban heat island effect as well as save the building owner cooling costs. Reflective tiles are usually made of clay or concrete, and manufactures have begun to develop pigments that reflect in the infrared. Special pigments allow roofing material to keep their traditional colors, such as brown, green, and terra cotta, while reflecting away up to 70% of the sun’s energy. These products enable buyers to forego the perceived tradeoff between energy efficiency and the aesthetic concerns with a bright-white roof (EPA, 2007). It should be noted these alternatives do not provide stormwater quantity or quality benefits.

Unlike conventional roofing, green roofs promote retention and evapotranspiration of precipitation. This stormwater management technique is very effective in reducing the volume and velocity of stormwater runoff from roofs.

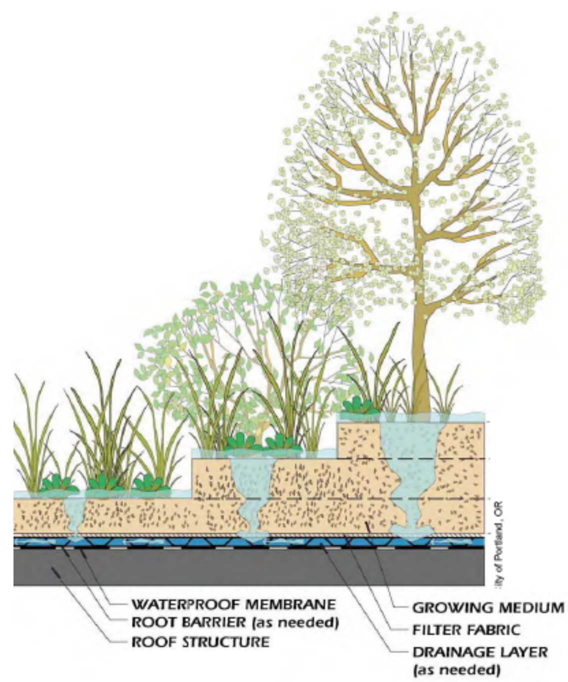
Green roofs can be installed on many types of roofs, from small slanting roofs to large commercial flat roofs. The maximum acceptable pitch for conventional green roofs is 25%, unless documentation is provided for runoff control on a steeper slope. Green roofs are an ideal option for new buildings that are taking long term cost savings and energy conservation into consideration. Many existing buildings can also be retrofitted with green roofs if structurally capable.

BMP PC – 114
GREEN ROOFS

Although green roofs are more expensive than conventional roofs initially, they provide long term benefits and costs savings. A green roof's underlying waterproofing can extend the life of a roof two to three times by protecting the roof from mechanical damage, shielding the roof from UV radiation, and buffering temperature extremes. Green roofs also reduce energy costs by providing insulation and absorbing/reflecting excess heat and light. The roof slowly absorbs energy from the sun during the day and releases it as the air cools, thereby reducing heating and cooling costs. The benefits will be greatest during the summer months, and low buildings will see the greatest benefits. Green roofs also reduce the urban heat island effect by providing evaporative cooling and can improve air quality by filtering dust particles.

Components of a Green Roof

There are three basic types of green roofs (GRHC, 2008). An extensive green roof system is 6 inches or less in depth, and has a water saturation weight of 10-35 lbs/ft². It usually has limited accessibility and is planted with drought-tolerant succulent plants and grasses. A semi-intensive green roof contains material 25% above or below 6 inches. It may be partially accessible, has a water saturation weight of up to 50 lbs/ft² and has potential for greater plant diversity than an extensive roof. An intensive green roof is deeper than 6 inches and typically has a water saturation weight between 50-300 lbs/ft². These roofs are usually accessible to others besides maintenance and allow for great plant diversity. Each green roof project is unique, given the purpose of the building, its architecture and the preferences of its owner and end user. However, green roof systems are typically comprised of the same components:



- Plant material
- Growing medium
- Filter fabric
- Drainage layer
- Insulation (optional)
- Waterproof membrane/root barrier
- Roof structure

In addition to the three primary green roof categories, there are two main approaches to installing green roofs; these are classified as Modular and Loose Laid. Each of these categories includes a variety of specific construction methods and system design approaches.

Plant Material

BMP PC – 114
GREEN ROOFS

The plant material chosen for green roofs is designed to take up much of the water that falls on the roof during a storm event and be drought tolerant. Plant material also collects dust, creates oxygen, releases moisture, and provides evaporative cooling. Plant selection is very important to the sustainability of the roof. The extensive green roof should reach 90% growth coverage within two years. The following criteria should be taken into consideration when selecting vegetation for the green roof:

- Drought tolerant, requiring little or no irrigation after establishment
- Self-sustaining, without the need for fertilizers, pesticides, or herbicides
- Able to withstand heat, cold, and high winds
- Very low-maintenance, needing little or no mowing or trimming
- Perennial or self-sowing
- Fire resistant

A mix of sedum/succulent plant communities is recommended because they possess many of these attributes. Herbs, forbs, grasses and other low groundcovers can also be used to provide additional benefits and aesthetics, however these plants may need more watering and maintenance to survive and keep their appearance.

Growing Medium

The growing medium is a critical element of stormwater storage and detention on a green roof, and provides a buffer between the roof structure and vegetation for root development. Storage is provided by a green roof primarily through water held in tension in the growing medium pores. The growing medium in an extensive green roof should be a lightweight mineral material with a minimum of organic material and should stand up to freeze/thaw cycles. Semi-intensive and intensive roofs may have organic material and/or sand added to the mineral material. Organic material should not contain peat, because of its nonrenewable nature and burning potential, nor animal waste, which can leach pollutants into stormwater and may eventually leave the site. The engineered material should be FLL approved.

Roof Structure

The load capacity of a roof structure must be taken into account when considering the installation of a green roof.

ADVANTAGES

1. Lower stormwater runoff volume.
2. Lower Utility Costs.
3. Can be used as an open space amenity.
4. Can reduce water quality treatment costs when growing medium is at least 5 inches in depth.

BMP PC – 114
GREEN ROOFS

LIMITATIONS

1. Roof Structure must be designed for the green roof loading. A structural engineer should verify that the roof will support the weight of the green roof system. It is important to consider the saturated weight of the roof in the design calculations. Extensive green roofs typically weigh between 15 and 25 psf and are compatible with wood or steel decks. Intensive green roof weigh more than 50 psf and typically require concrete supporting decks.
2. Green roof plantings should be able to withstand heat, cold, and high winds. After establishment, the plants should be self-sustaining and tolerant of drought conditions.
3. An irrigation system may be required depending on the plantings chosen for the green roof.
4. The green roof should be constructed during active growing season and during the dormant times (i.e. winter).

DESIGN CRITERIA

The use of green roofs provides a quantitative benefit for both water quantity and quality management. The following paragraphs discuss the details of how a green roof affects the design, runoff quantity and quality.

Quantity

Installing a green roof alters the surface response to rainfall with respect to runoff. A green roof will have a significant increase in storage capability when compared to a standard roof with little or no storage capability. The initial rainfall striking the soil of a green roof is absorbed until the soil is saturated.

The capacity of a green roof to abosrb runoff is governed by planting media thickness, roof slope or "pitch", and rainfall depth. Consequently, runoff from and curve numbers (CN's) applied to a green roof may vary for the one (1), two (2), 10, and 100-year design storm events depending on individual design characteristics. To simplify the design and approval process, the Lake County has adopted a method where the post development CN used for green roofs when computing the hydrologic computations is adjusted by the average depth of the green roof soil. In general, the CN of a roof (98) may be reduced by 2 for each inch of planting soil. The following table provides sample soil depth and CN values

Roof Thickness (in)	Curve Number (CN)
1	96
2	94
3	92
4	90
5	88
6	86

The use of these reduced curve numbers will account for reduced runoff from a green roof when the post-developed runoff rates are compared to the pre-developed runoff rates.

Quality

Construction of a green roof in place of a standard impervious roof will also positively impact water quality design. When computing the water quality volume, the percent impervious, I, ($Rv = (0.05 + 0.009(I))$) is reduced and the water quality volume as well.

If the water quality flow rate (WQr) is calculated using the equation an approved stormwater quality unit (SQU), the impervious area is reduced by the area of the green roof, reducing the water quality treatment rate and the subsequent size of the water quality unit required.

Below are the TIR requirements.

1. Storage Volume Calculations
2. Emergency Overflow Calculations
3. Water Quality Volume Calculations (if system is part of the stormwater quality management system)
4. Water Quantity Volume Calculations (if system is part of the stormwater quantity management system)
5. Structural Engineer's Certification (for Retrofits)

The following are the plan detail requirements.

1. Area Map Showing Area Covered by Proposed Green Roof.
2. Plant Specifications.
3. Filter Fabric Specifications.

O & M Manual Requirements

The following are the minimum requirements for the O & M Manual for green roofs.

1. Tabular Inspection Schedule.
2. Site Diagram with Green Roof Area.
3. Inspection Checklist.
4. Narrative description of Inspection Procedure including Startup Maintenance and Fertilizer Guidance.

5. Plant Coverage Minimum Requirement (90%).
6. Emergency Overflow System Inspection.
7. Wind and Rain Erosion Inspection.
8. Weeding.

BMP PC – 115

BIORETENTION

Bioretention, micro-bioretention and rain garden areas are structural stormwater controls that capture and temporarily store the WQ_v using soils and vegetation in landscaped areas to remove pollutants from stormwater runoff.

The limitations of each practice are defined below.

- Bioretention: Intended use for drainage areas 5 acres or less, however if hydraulic and hydrologic design criteria are met, sites may be designed to manage multiple 5 acre watersheds. When designed according to the guidance below, bioretention practices will provide treatment for the required WQ_v.

- Micro-bioretention: Intended to be versatile and can be adapted for use anywhere there is landscaping. Contributing drainage area < 20,000 $ft^{2.}$ When designed according to the guidance below, micro-bioretention practices will provide treatment for the required WQ_v (see PC-116).

- Rain garden: Typically used to treat runoff from small impervious areas like rooftops, driveways, and sidewalks. Rain gardens can also be used in retrofitting and redevelopment applications and in series where existing slopes require energy dissipation. Contributing drainage area < 10,000ft^2 (see PC-101).

Bioretention areas are engineered facilities in which runoff is conveyed as sheet flow to the "treatment area," consisting of a pretreament area, including a sediment forebay, ponding area containing vegetation with a planting soil bed, organic/mulch layer and gravel and perforated pipe underdrain system. The filtered runoff is typically collected and returned to the conveyance system, though it can be infiltrated into the in-situ soils in areas with porous soils (>1"/hour), though infiltration may not be permitted in Wellfield Zoning Districts or hotspot locations. If no perforated pipe underdrain system is used, a geotechnical investigation, soil infiltration testing, and a hotspot investigation must be completed.

Bioretention facilities can provide a limited amount of water quantity control, with the storage provided by the facility included in the design of any downstream detention structures. Bioretention areas are also designed for intermittent flow and to drain and aerate between rainfall events. Sites with continuous flow from groundwater, sump pumps or other areas must be avoided.

Bioretention areas generally consist of:

1. Grass filter strip between the contributing drainage area and the ponding area;
2. Ponding areas containing vegetation with a planting soil bed,
3. Organic/mulch layer, and
4. Gravel and perforated pipe underdrain system to collect runoff that has filtered through the soil layers (bioretention areas can optionally be designed to infiltrate into the soil).

BMP PC – 115

BIORETENTION

If the bioretention area is used as a sediment control measure during active construction, the performance sureties will not be released until sediment has been cleaned out of the bioretention area and elevations and grades have been reestablished as noted in the approved stormwater management plan for post-construction runoff control

ADVANTAGES

1. Applicable to drainage areas <5 acres.
2. Often located in landscape islands.
3. High pollutant removal.
4. High community acceptance, if designed and maintained correctly.

LIMITATIONS

1. Less than 5 acres contributing drainage area.
2. Requires extensive landscaping
3. Not recommended for areas with steep slopes

DESIGN CRITERIA

1. The drainage area (contributing or effective) must be 5 acres or less, though 0.5 to 2 acres is preferred. Alternative designs can vary by location but NOT hydraulic/hydrologic design considerations.

2. The minimum size for facility is 200 ft^2, with a length to width ratio of 2:1. Slope of the site can be no more than 6%.

3. Planting soil filter bed is sized using a Darcy's Law equation with a filter bed drain time of 48 hours and a coefficient of permeability (k) of 0.5 ft/day. The planting soil bed must be at least 2 feet deep. Planting soils must be sandy loam, loamy sand or loam texture with a clay content rating from 10 to 25 percent. The soil must have an infiltration rate of at least 0.5 inches per hour and a pH between 5.5 and 6.5. In addition, the planting soil should have a 1.5 to 3 percent organic content and a maximum 500-ppm concentration of soluble salts.

4. The maximum ponding depth in bioretention areas is 24 inches.

5. Pretreatment, including forebay, design for pre-treatment must follow the requirements outlined in the Technical Manual.

6. The mulch layer must consist of 2-4 inches of commercially available fine shredded hardwood mulch or shredded hardwood chips.

7. The underdrain collection system must be equipped with a 6 inch perforated PVC pipe in an 8-inch gravel layer. The pipe must have 3/8-inch perforations, spaced on 6-inch

centers with a minimum of 4 holes per row, or equivalent. The pipe is spaced at a maximum of 10 feet on center, and a minimum grade of 0.5% must be maintained. A permeable filter fabric or a gravel lens (3/4-1/4 inch, crushed rock 2 to 3 inches deep), is placed between the gravel layer and the planting soil bed.

8. The depth from the bottom of the bioretention facility to the documented seasonally high water table must be a minimum of 2 feet. The seasonal high water table must be field determined by a soil scientist or geo-technical investigation.

9. Runoff captured by facility must have energy dissipation to prevent erosion of the organic or mulch layer. Velocities entering the mulch layer must be less than or equal to 1.5 ft/s.

10. Continuous flow from groundwater, sump pumps or other areas to the bioretention area is not recommended and will be reviewed on a case by case condition.

11. An overflow structure and a non-erosive overflow channel must be provided to safely pass the flow from the bioretention area that exceeds the storage capacity to a stabilized downstream area.

12. All components of the BMP must be located within an easement. Access to the BMP must be located within the easement.

13. Energy dissipation to reduce velocities and spread flow into the bioretention ponding area.

O & M MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

A BMP operations and maintenance plan is required for bioretention facilities. The plan must be approved by Lake County and maintained and updated by the BMP owner. Refer to the checklist for BMP owners for the routine operation, maintenance and inspection of bioretention areas. The County will perform annual BMP inspections, using a similar checklist. The BMP owner is responsible for maintenance costs and inspection fees.

1. Inspect and repair/replace treatment components.

BMP PC – 116

MICROBIORETENTION

Micro-bioretention is intended to be versatile and can be adapted for use anywhere there is landscaping. Contributing drainage area < 20,000 $ft^{2.}$ When designed according to the guidance below, micro-bioretention practices will provide treatment for the required WQ_v.

Micro-bioretention practices capture and treat runoff from discrete impervious areas by passing it through a filter bed mixture of sand, soil, and organic matter. Filtered stormwater is either returned to the conveyance system or partially infiltrated into the soil. Micro-bioretention practices are versatile and may be adapted for use anywhere there is landscaping.

Micro-bioretention is a multi-functional practice that can be easily adapted for new and redevelopment applications in commercial and industrial projects. Stormwater runoff is stored temporarily and filtered in landscaped facilities shaped to take runoff from various sized impervious areas. Micro-bioretention provides water quality treatment, aesthetic value, and can be applied as concave parking lot islands, linear roadway or median filters, terraces slope facilities, residential cul-de-sac islands, and ultra-urban planter boxes.

ADVANTAGES

Micro-bioretention requires less space to implement relative to bioretention.

LIMITATIONS:

The following constraints are critical when considering the use of micro-bioretention to capture and treat stormwater runoff:

- **Space:** The surface area of a typical micro-bioretention filter is dependent on the area of the contributing imperviousness. The size and distribution of open areas within a project (e.g., parking lot islands, landscaped areas) must be considered early during a project's planning and design if these practices are considered.

- **Topography:** Slopes of contributing areas and filter beds should be gradual (<5%). If slopes are too steep, then level-spreading devices may be needed to redistribute flow prior to filtering. If slopes within micro-bioretention practices are too steep, then a series of check dams, terraces, or berms may be needed to maintain sheetflow internally.

  There should also be an elevation difference between the inflow and outflow of a micro- bioretention practice to allow flow through the filter. This difference is critical when designing downstream conveyance systems (e.g., grass channels, storm drains).

- **Soils:** Soil conditions are a crucial determining factor for micro-bioretention because specific applications will be affected. When located in sandier soils, these practices may be used to promote infiltration. If clayey soils are encountered, an underdrain system may be needed to convey water downstream. Also, elevated groundwater may limit filter bed thickness and excavated applications.

Subsurface water conditions (e.g., water table) will help determine the thickness of filter beds used. The probability of practice failure increases if the filter bed intercepts groundwater. Therefore, micro-bioretention practice inverts should be above local groundwater tables.

- **Drainage Area:** The drainage area to micro-bioretention practices should be limited. As the impervious area draining to each practice exceeds ½ acre, practice effectiveness weakens and larger systems designed according to Bioretention should be considered.

- **Hotspot Runoff:** Micro-bioretention practices that are designed to promote infiltration of runoff into the ground should not be used to treat hotspots that generate higher concentrations of hydrocarbons, trace metals, or toxicants that may contaminate groundwater.

- **Infrastructure:** The location of existing and proposed buildings and utilities (e.g., water supply wells, sewer, storm drains, electricity) will influence the design and construction of micro-bioretention. Landscape designers should also consider overhead electrical and telecommunication lines when selecting trees to be planted.

DESIGN CRITERIA:

The following conditions should be considered when designing micro-bioretention practices.

- **Conveyance:** Micro-bioretention systems should be designed off-line whenever possible. A flow splitter should be used to divert excess runoff away from the filter media to a stable, downstream conveyance system. If by passing a micro-bioretention practice is impractical, an internal overflow device (e.g., elevated yard inlet) may be used.

  Runoff shall enter, flow through, and exit micro-bioretention practices in a safe and non-erosive manner. Inflow may be through depressed curbs with wheel stops, curb cuts, or conveyed directly using downspouts, covered drains, or catch basins. Depending on site layout and the size and shape of the impervious area being treated, overflow structures should be located to maximize internal flow paths through the filter media. An underdrain system may be necessary to discharge treated stormwater safely downstream. Underdrains may be interconnected to other micro-scale practices as part of a treatment system or directly to the storm drain.

- **Treatment:** Micro-bioretention practices shall meet the following conditions:

  - The drainage area to any individual practice shall be 20,000 ft^2 or less.
  - Micro-bioretention practices shall capture and store the WQ_v.

- The filter bed surface area (ft^2) shall be at least 10% of the impervious drainage area and the surface ponding depth 24 inches or less.
- Filter beds should be a minimum of 24 inches deep.
- Filter beds should not intercept groundwater. If designed as infiltration practices, filter bed inverts shall be separated at two feet from the documented seasonal high water table.
- A surface mulch layer (maximum 2 to 3 inches thick) should be provided to enhance plant survival and inhibit weed growth.
- The filtering media, mulch, and underdrain systems shall conform to standard precices.

- **Setbacks:**

    - Micro-bioretention practices should be located down gradient and setback at least 10 feet from structures. Micro-bioretention variants (e.g., planter boxes) that must be located adjacent to structures should include an impermeable liner.
    - Micro-bioretention practices shall be located at least 30 feet from water supply wells and 25 feet from septic systems. If designed to infiltrate, then the practice shall be located at least 50 feet from confined water supply wells and 100 feet from unconfined water supply wells.
    - Micro-bioretention practices should be sized and located to meet minimum local requirements for clearance from underground utilities.
    - Any trees planted in micro-bioretention practices shall be located to avoid future problems with overhead electrical and telecommunication lines.

- **Landscaping:** Vegetation is critical to the function and appearance of any micro-bioretention system. Therefore, landscaping plans shall be provided and approved. Native and adapted plants are preferred, hardier, and usually require minimal nutrient or pesticide application. Also, aesthetically pleasing landscape designs generally enhance property value and community acceptance.

Construction Criteria:

The following items should be addressed during construction of projects with micro-bioretention:

- **Erosion and Sediment Control:** Micro-bioretention practices should not be constructed until the contributing drainage area is stabilized. If this is impractical, runoff from distributed areas should be diverted away and no sediment control practices should be used near the proposed location.

- **Soil Compaction:** Excavation should be conducted in dry conditions with equipment located outside of the practice to minimize bottom and sidewall compaction. Only lightweight, low ground-contact equipment should be used within micro-bioretention practices and the bottom scarified before installing underdrains and filtering media.

- **Underdrain Installation:** Gravel for the underdrain system should be clean, washed, and free of fines. Underdrain pipe should be checked to ensure that both the material and perforations meet specifications. The upstream ends of the underdrain pipe should be capped prior to installation

- **Filter Media Installation:** Bioretention soils may be mixed on-site before placement. However, soils should not be placed under saturated conditions. The filter media should be placed and graded using excavators or backhoes operating adjacent to the practice and be placed in horizontal layers (12 inches per lift maximum). Proper compaction of the media will occur naturally. Spraying or sprinkling water on each lift until saturated may quicken settling times.

- **Landscape Installation:** The optimum planting time is during the autumn months. Spring planting is also acceptable but may require watering.

Inspection:

- Regular inspections shall be made during the following stages of construction:

  - During excavation to subgrade and placement and backfill of underdrain systems.
  - During placement of filter media.
  - During construction of appurtenant conveyance.
  - Upon completion of final grading and establishment of permanent stabilization.

Maintenance Criteria:

The following items should be addressed to ensure proper maintenance and long-term performance of micro-bioretention practices:

- The top few inches of filter media should be removed and replaced when water ponds for more than 24 hours. Silts and sediment should be removed from the surface of the filter bed when accumulation exceeds one inch.
- Where practices are used to treat areas with higher concentrations of heavy metals (e.g., parking lots, roads), mulch should be replaced annually. Otherwise, the top two to three inches should be replaced as necessary.
- Occasional pruning and replacement of dead vegetation is necessary. If specific plants are not surviving, more appropriate species should be used. Watering may be required during prolonged dry periods.

BMP PC – 117

INNOVATIVE / PROPRIATARY WATER QUALITY SYSTEMS

Innovative or proprietary BMPs are any BMPs that are not considered traditional structural BMPs for which performance based design standards are provided in this manual. Examples of innovative BMPs would be manufactured BMPs such as hydrodynamic separation units, oil and floatable debris skimmers, and cartridge filter systems. All innovative BMPs must be professionally certified and approved through the Lake County MS4 New Product Committee. ASTM standard methods and / or approved testing methods must be followed when verifying performance of new measures.

The design process for an innovative BMP that is approved for use in unincorporated Lake County may be based on design flow capacity, on design volume, or other testing procedures approved by the County.

The following materials must be submitted in support of the application to approve a new BMP or process for use in unincorporated Lake County:

1. Narrative description of the practice or unit and its working principle(s).
2. Detailed description of the maintenance procedures.
3. Detailed drawings of the practice or unit.
4. Detailed description of the practice or unit's testing procedures.
5. Results of all tests.

The following performance criteria must be met by the proposed new BMPs. The BMPs:

1. Must meet the 80% TSS removal rate;
2. Must meet the floatable removal requirement;
3. May be required to reduce fecal bacteria;
4. May be required to control hydrocarbons or other land use-specific pollutants in stormwater runoff; and,
5. Must have a low to medium maintenance requirement to be considered by unincorporated Lake County for use on public projects.

Testing to establish the TSS removal rate must be conducted by an independent testing facility, not the BMP manufacturer. In lieu of independent testing data, the current pre-approved proprietary stormwater quality unit list from the County will be accepted but only in an off-line configuration.

A list of pre-approved proprietary / manufactured BMPs reviewed and approved by Lake County can be found on the Lake County Surveyor's website.

ADVANTAGES

Water quality requirements may be met with a small dedicated area.

BMP PC – 117

INNOVATIVE / PROPRIATARY WATER QUALITY SYSTEMS

LIMITATIONS

For larger sites, the cost of a proprietary unit becomes too large to be economical. Modification of a required detention pond to meet water quality requirements can be more economically advantageous.

DESIGN CRITERIA

The proposed proprietary stormwater quality system must be approved to treat the first flush or stormwater quality rate calculated per Chapter 10 of this manual.

O & M MANUAL REQUIREMENTS

The O & M Manual for a innovative / proprietary water quality units must include:

- Owner contact information.
- Removal of debris from the unit.
- Maintenance of the unit with specifics on measuring the depth of collected materials. This must include use of a sediment measuring device (e.g. Sludge Judge®), instruction on removal of sediment (e.g. vacuum truck), removal of floating material, emergency maintenance (flammable materials spill)..
- Inspection checklist including maximum depth of sediment before cleanout and frequency of inspection.
- Sight diagram showing BMP and associated easements and boundaries.
- Owner responsibility statement.
- Right-of-Entry statement.

Appendix E
Testing Specifications

TS – 101

MANDREL TESTING

All gravity sewers shall be watertight and free from leakage. Prior to acceptance, all flexible pipe (e.g. PVC and HDPE) installations will include 100% video record inspection and mandrel deflection testing. Both test shall be performed a minimum of 30 days *after* final cover is established. Mandrel testing procedures are provided below.

The Contractor shall be required to repair all visible defects documented by the video record. The method of repair shall be per the written approval of the County or its designated representative.

All storm sewers using flexible pipe shall be tested for deflection by means of a go / no-go mandrel gage or other methods as approved by the County.

The mandrel deflection test shall be as follows:

1. Waiting Period
   - The mandrel deflection test shall be done no sooner than thirty (30) days after final backfill has been placed.

2. Equipment
   - Mandrels shall be constructed with nine (9) or ten (10) arms. Mandrels with fewer than nine (9) arms are not allowed.
   - The Diameter (D) mandrel dimension shall carry a tolerance of + 0.01 inches.

3. Allowable Deflection

   The allowable deflection shall be based on the pipe type as follows:

   a. PVC Pipe

   The allowable deflection for PVC pipe shall be 5% of the base inside diameter as determined by ASTM D 3034 and F 679. The dimensions are as follows:

TS – 101
MANDREL TESTING

DIMENSIONS FOR MANDREL – PVC Pipe		
Nominal Pipe Diameter, inches	Base ID of Pipe, inches	Diameter (D)[1] for Deflection of 5%, inches
12	11.361	10.79
15	13.898	13.20
18	16.976	16.13
21	20.004	19.00
24	21.964	20.87
27	25.327	24.06
30	29.132	27.68
36	34.869	33.13

1 – The diameter is based on SDR 35 pipe thickness, if thicker pipe is used, the diameter may be adjusted accordingly. Contact the LCSO for approval.

b. HDPE Pipe

The allowable deflection for PVC pipe shall be 5% of the base inside diameter as determined by ASTM D 3034 and F 679. The dimensions are as follows:

DIMENSIONS FOR MANDREL – HDPE Pipe		
Nominal Pipe Diameter, inches	Base ID of Pipe, inches	Diameter (D)[1] for Deflection of 5%, inches
12	11.63	11.05
15	14.51	13.78
18	17.45	16.58
24	23.22	22.06
30	29.05	27.60
36	34.80	33.06
42	40.09	38.09
48	46.09	43.79
54	51.47	48.90
60	57.62	54.74

4. The Contractor shall provide proving rings to check the mandrel. The proving rings shall be clearly labeled with the dimensions and ASTM Standard.

5. Testing Procedure

   a. The mandrel shall be hand pulled through all sections of the sewer lines.

b. Determination of Line Acceptance:

If the mandrel can be hand pulled through the entire length of the section tested, the section shall have passed the test.

c. Determination of Line Failure

If the mandrel cannot be hand pulled through the entire length of the section tested, the section shall have failed the test.

The Contractor shall be required to uncover, replace, or repair any section of sewer not passing the mandrel test.